

**Evgenia Antova  
Ekaterina Boytchinova  
Poly Benatova**

**A SHORT GRAMMAR OF  
B U L G A R I A N  
FOR ENGLISH SPEAKING LEARNERS**

**Second revised edition: Ekaterina Boytchinova  
Editor: Prof. Stefka Petrova**

Editors of the first edition (1991):  
prof. Andrei Danchev, prof. Stefka Petrova

Цена 10 лв.

Evgenia Antova, Ekaterina Boytchinova, Poly Benatova

---

A SHORT GRAMMAR OF B U L G A R I A N  
FOR ENGLISH SPEAKING LEARNERS

Evgenia Antova  
Ekaterina Boytchinova  
Poly Benatova

A SHORT GRAMMAR OF  
BULGARIAN  
FOR ENGLISH SPEAKING LEARNERS

© Evgenia Antova, 2002  
© Ekaterina Boytchinova, 2002  
© Poly Benatova, 2002

ISBN 954-91197-1-8

Издава - "АВМ Комерс" ЕТ, "АСПА" СД  
София, 2002

## SOME BASIC DATA ABOUT THE BULGARIAN LANGUAGE

Modern Bulgarian is one of the South Slavonic languages, descendant of Old Bulgarian. Various later adaptations of old Bulgarian are often referred to as Old Church Slavonic. Modern Bulgarian is now the official standard language of the Republic of Bulgaria.

Bulgarian and Slavonic writing developed after the creation of the Cyrillic Alphabet in the 9th century (A.D.). Bulgarian is in fact the oldest Slavonic language which used writing for literary work and one of the oldest in Europe. The Slavonic literary tradition flourished for several centuries in the Bulgarian lands and spread to Serbia and Russia.

The development of the Bulgarian language is usually divided into the following three stages: Old Bulgarian - from the 9th to the 11th century; Middle Bulgarian - from the 12th to the 15th century; and Modern Bulgarian - from the 15th century up to the present times.

The development of Bulgarian offers some parallels to the development of the English language. Now it stands out as the only analytical language in the family of the Slavonic languages. It has some common features with the Balkan languages: e.g. loss of the Infinitive, a post-positioned article (as in Roumanian), formation of the Future Tense with an Auxiliary particle. Other very important features are the simplified structure of the Noun (no case endings) and the rich variety of verbal forms.

Unlike English, however, Bulgarian spelling is mainly phonetic. With a few exceptions, nearly each letter of the alphabet stands for one sound. In certain cases, the spelling is morphological.

## PREFACE

The present grammar aims at giving a systematic exposition of Bulgarian morphology, pronunciation and spelling for foreigners speaking English as a native or as a second language and studying Bulgarian with or without a teacher, and for teachers of Bulgarian.

In it syntax is touched upon only briefly and in connection with morphology, when the uses of a morphological form are explained.

Particular attention has been paid to the following aspects of Bulgarian

Grammar, which may present greater difficulty to learners: the gender of the noun and the adjective and agreement in gender of a word with its head-noun, word formation (suffixes with nouns and prefixes with verbs), the definite article, the aspect of the verbs and their use in the system of tenses, the renarrated mood, word-order peculiarities of the Bulgarian sentence (enclitics, proclitics, doubling of the object, etc.) Much attention has been devoted to stress.

When structuring the grammar units we first set forth the essence and principal peculiarities of the category concerned, then we distinguish the similarities and differences with the English grammar category, in the third place the morphological forms have been shown, and their use in sentences.

All examples are based on contemporary colloquial Bulgarian and have been translated into English.

The terminology accepted is after Scatton's "Reference Grammar of Modern Bulgarian".

#### Authors

The second revised edition adds comparisons with Russian language.

I am deeply indebted to prof. St. Petrova for her encouragement. Her detailed comments have helped me very substantially with the preparation of the second edition - without her suggestions and advice almost every page of this book would have less to offer.

E. Boytchinova

#### THE BULGARIAN ALPHABET БЪЛГАРСКАТА АЗБУКА

Printed letter	Hand-written	Phonetic translcr.	Pronunciation of the letter in the Alphabet
А а	А а	[a]	[a]
Б б	Б б	[b]	[bə]
В в	В в	[v]	[və]
Г г	Г г	[g]	[gə]
Д д	Д д	[d]	[də]
Е е	Е е	[e]	[e]
Ж ж	Ж ж	[ž]	[žə]
З з	З з	[z]	[zə]
И и	И и	[i]	[i]
Й ѹ	Й ѹ	[j]	[i]
К к	К к	[k]	[kə]
Л л	Л л	[l]	[lə]
М м	М м	[m]	[mə]
Н н	Н н	[n]	[nə]
О о	О о	[o]	[o]
П п	П п	[p]	[pə]
Р р	Р р	[r]	[rə]
С с	С с	[s]	[sə]
Т т	Т т	[t]	[tə]
У у	У у	[u]	[u]
Ф ф	Ф ф	[f]	[fə]
Х х	Х х	[x]	[xə]
Ц ц	Ц ц	[c]	[cə]
Ч ч	Ч ч	[č]	[čə]
Ш ш	Ш ш	[š]	[šə]
Щ ѩ	Щ ѩ	[št]	[štə]
Ђ ъ	Ђ ъ	[ə]	[ergo`ljam]
ь	ь	[j]	[er`malək]
Ю ю	Ю ю	[ju]	[ju]
Я я	Я я	[ja]	[ja]

THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET  
РУССКИЙ АЛФАВИТ

Printed letter	Hand-written	Phonetic transcr.	Pronunciation of the letter in the Alphabet
Аа	Аа	[a]	[a]
Бб	Бб	[b]	[be]
Вв	Вв	[v]	[ve]
Гг	Гг	[g]	[ge]
Дд	Дд	[d]	[de]
Ее	Ее	[je]	[je]
Ёё	Ёё	[jo]	[jo]
Жж	Жж	[ž]	[že]
Зз	Зз	[z]	[ze]
Ии	Ии	[i]	[i]
Йй	Йй	[j]	[iko'rotkoe]
Кк	Кк	[k]	[ka]
Лл	Лл	[l]	[el]
Мм	Мм	[m]	[em]
Нн	Нн	[n]	[en]
Оо	Оо	[o]	[o]
Пп	Пп	[p]	[pe]
Рр	Рр	[r]	[er]
Сс	Сс	[s]	[es]
Тт	Тт	[t]	[te]
Үү	Үү	[u]	[u]
Фф	Фф	[f]	[fe]
Хх	Хх	[x]	[xa]
Цц	Цц	[c]	[ce]
Чч	Чч	[č]	[če]
Шш	Шш	[š]	[ša]
Щщ	Щщ	[šč]	[šča]
҃ъ	҃ъ	[ə]	[`tvjordəj`znak]
ы	ы	[əj]	[er`əj]
ь	ь	[j]	[`mjaxkij`znak]
Ээ	Ээ	[e]	[`eəba`rotnae]

Юю	Юю	[ju]	[ju]
Яя	Яя	[ja]	[ja]

## PHONETICS ФОНЕТИКА

### Articulation (General Notes)

In contrast with English where the muscles are quite relaxed, the articulation of the sounds in Bulgarian requires greater tensity of the muscles. The force of the air stream is weaker and the degree of explosion in the formation of plosive consonants is much smaller. It should be born in mind that the sounds of Bulgarian, although roughly similar to some sounds that exist in English, do not correspond exactly to English sounds.

#### Vowels

#### Гласни

Bulgarian has six vowel sounds, which occur in both stressed and unstressed syllables. The Bulgarian vowels differ from the vowels of English not only in number but in the manner and place of articulation as well.

In comparison to English long and short vowels, Bulgarian vowels are neither very open nor very close. Differences of vowel length are not phonologically important in Bulgarian, that is, no words are differentiated only by the length of the vowel. Vowels are pronounced with medium length.

Bulgarian vowels allow a number of variants, which facilitates learning at the beginning stages.

#### Diagram of the Vowels in Bulgarian

front	central	back
high	not round	round
mid	vowel/letter	vowel/letter
high	[i] ( <i>u</i> )	[a] ( <i>a</i> )
mid	[e] ( <i>e</i> )	[ə] ( <i>ə</i> )
low		[u] ( <i>y</i> )

1. Bulgarian [i], spelt with the letter *u* is a longer and closer sound

than English short [i] as in *fish* but shorter and laxer than English long [i:] as in *feet*. It is similar to the [i] sound in some European languages like French, German, Italian, etc.

дим [dim]	'smoke'
ръба [‘riba]	'fish'
пиша [‘piša]	'to write'

In Russian this vowel is pronounced as in Bulgarian. Example - *пишать* - the Russian infinitive 'to write'.

2. The Bulgarian vowel [e], spelt with the letter *e* is close to English [e] as in *get*.

ден [den]	'day'
есен [‘esen]	'autumn'
зелён [ze‘len]	'green'

In Russian this vowel tends to be pronounced as the diphthong in *yes* - example *день* [djenj] - 'day'.

3. The Bulgarian vowel [a], spelt with the letter *a* is quite similar to the first constituent of the English diphthongs [aj] as in *five* and [au] as in *house*.

мàса [‘masa]	'table'
чàнта [‘čanta]	'bag'
рекà [re‘ka]	'river'

Both in Bulgarian and in Russian when this vowel is not stressed tends to be pronounced as [ə] - *картина* [kər‘tinə] meaning 'picture' in both languages.

4. The Bulgarian vowel [ə], spelt with the letter *ə* is similar to the English sound [ə], which is in unstressed syllables as in *student* but the tongue should be retracted and raised higher. It is close to the stressed vowel of *come* in American English. This vowel is typical for the Bulgarian language. In Russian there is no such a vowel in a stressed position and in words of the same root as Bulgarian *зъб* this vowel is [u] in Russian - *зуб*. Another example is Bulgarian *спътник*, Russian *спутник* 'satellite'.

зъб [zəp]	'tooth'
българин [‘bəlgarin]	'Bulgarian'
ъгъл [‘əgəl]	'corner', 'angle'

5. The Bulgarian vowel [o], spelt with the letter *o* is similar to English [o] as in *hot*, but the lips are more active in the formation of the

Bulgarian [o], which is more rounded.

нощ [nošt]	'night'
прозорец [pro`zorec]	'window'
леглò [leg`lo]	'bed'

When not under stress this vowel tends to be pronounced as [u] while in Russian - as [ə] when it is far from the stressed syllable, and next to the stressed vowel as [a]. The word for 'milk' in Bulgarian is *мляко* pronounced ['mljaku], and in Russian *молоко* pronounced [məla'ko].

6. The Bulgarian vowel [u], spelt with the letter *у* is tenser, closer and more retracted than English [u]. The lips are quite active in producing the rounding of the Bulgarian sound.

уча [`uča]	'to study'
буква [`bukva]	'letter'
прочута [pro`čuta]	'famous', 'well-known'

In Russian this vowel is quite similar to the Bulgarian - compare the Russian infinitive for 'to study' *учить*.

#### Unstressed Vowels

#### *Неударени гласни*

In unstressed position vowels are shorter, laxer, more central and weaker than their stressed counterparts.

In unstressed syllables, especially in Eastern dialects and generally in rapid speech [e] is narrowed to [i], [a] tends to be reduced to [ə], and [o] is raised to [u].

#### Consonants

#### *Съгласни*

The consonants of Bulgarian are articulated less energetically than those of English. Voiced consonants are devoiced at the end of words. The same phonetic rule is true in Russian language. The word for 'coast, bank' in Bulgarian is spelt *бръг* and pronounced [brjak], in Russian spelt *берег* and pronounced [`bjerek].

#### 1. [b] : [p]

The Bulgarian consonants [b] and [p], spelt with the letters *б* and *п* are slightly different from English [b] and [p]. They are formed with a protrusion of the lips and the explosion is weaker than in the articulation of the English sounds.

Бългàрия [bəl`garija]	'Bulgaria'
пýтам [pitam]	'to ask'
рàбота [`rabota]	'work'
продавàч [proda`vač]	'salesman'
добър [do`bər]	'good'
прóлет [`prolet]	'spring'

The consonant [b] is devoiced and pronounced as [p] at the end of words but is spelt with the letter *б*.

хлеб [xljap]	'bread'
but: хлебен [xleben]	'bread' (adj.)
роб [rop]	'slave'
but: рòби [`robi]	'slaves'
гардерòб [garde`rop]	'wardrobe'
but: гардерòби [garde`robi]	'wardrobes'
Любчо [`ljupčo]	
but: Любен [`ljuben]	

Some examples from Russian:

хлеб [hljep]	'bread',
but: хлебный [hlebnəj]	'bread' (adj.);
раб [rap]	'slave',
but: раба [ra`ba]	'woman slave'.

#### 2. [v] : [f]

The Bulgarian consonants [v] and [f], spelt with the letters *в* and *ф* are similar to English [v] and [f].

вратà [vra`ta]	'door'
фòрма [`forma]	'form', 'shape'
отвàрям [ot`varjam]	'to open'
фìгура [`figura]	'figure'
вýра [`vjara]	'belief', 'faith'
телефон [tele`fon]	'telephone'

The consonant [v] is devoiced and pronounced as [f] at the end of words but is spelt with the letter *в*.

любòв [lju`bof]	'love'
but: любòвен [lju`boven]	'love' (attr.)
кръв [krəf]	'blood'
but: кръвен [`krəven]	'blood' (attr.)

гняв [gnjaf]	'anger'
but: гнèвно [`gnevno]	'angrily'
In Russian:	
любòвь [lju`bof]	'love'
but: любвì [ljub`vi]	'of love' (possessive, dative and prepositional cases);
кровь [krof]	'blood'
but: крòви [`krovi]	'of blood'.

### 3. [g] : [k]

The Bulgarian consonants [g] and [k], spelt with the letters *з* and *к* are similar to English [g] and [k].

рàпа [`gara]	'railway station'
ръкà [rə`ka]	'hand', 'arm'
òгън [`ogən]	'fire'
кѝно [kino]	'cinema'
голѝм [go`ljam]	'big', 'large'
покрѝвка [pok`rifka]	'table-cloth, cover'

The consonant [g] is devoiced and pronounced as [k] at the end of words but is spelt with the letter *з*.

сняг [snjak]	'snow'
but: снеговè [snego`ve]	'snows'
бряг [brjak]	'coast'
but: бреговè [brego`ve]	'coasts'
вpar [vrak]	'enemy'
but: враговè [vrago`ve]	'enemies'

In Russian:

снер [snjek]	'snow'
but: снерѝ [sne`gi]	'snows'
бèрег [`bjerek]	'coast'
but: берегà [bere`ga]	'coasts'
вpar [vrak]	'enemy'
but: врагѝ [vra`gi]	'enemies'

### 4. [d] : [t]

The Bulgarian consonants [d] and [t], spelt with the letters *ð* and *т* are dental, in marked contrast to the purely alveolar English consonants

[d] and [t] and are formed with the blade of the tongue placed against the front teeth.

дàвам [`davam]	'to give'
там [tam]	'there'
бèден [`beden]	'poor'
кòтка [`kotka]	'cat'
дружба [`družba]	'friendship'
пет [pet]	'five'

The voiced consonant [d] is devoiced and pronounced as [t] at the end of words but is spelt with the letter *ð*.

град [grat]	'city',
but: градовè [grado`ve]	'cities'
глад [glat]	'hunger'
but: гладен [`gladen]	'hungry'
зàпад [`zapat]	'west'
but: зàпаден [`zapaden]	'western'

In Russian:

гòрод [`gorat]	'city'
but: города [gòra`da]	'cities'
гòлод [`golat]	'hunger'
but: голодный [ga`lodnəj]	'hungry'
зàпад [`zapat]	'western'
but: западный [`zapadnəj]	'western'

### 5. [z1] : [л]

The Bulgarian consonants [z1], spelt *ж* and [л], spelt *ш* are similar to English [z1] and [л] as in pleasure and nation, respectively.

живèя [ži`veja]	'to live'
шум [šum]	'noise'
снèжен [`snežen]	'snow' (adj.)
шèпот [`šepot]	'whisper'
дàже [`daže]	'even'
пишà [`piša]	'to write'

The voiced consonant [z1] is devoiced and pronounced as [š] at the end of words but is spelt with the letter *ж*.

нож [noš]	'knife'
but: ножòве [no`žove]	'knives'

етàж [e`taš]	'floor', 'storey'
but: етàжи [e`taži]	pl.
багàж [ba`gaš]	'luggage', 'baggage'
but: багàжът [ba`gažət]	'the luggage'
In Russian:	
нож [noš]	'knife'
but: ножи ['noži]	'knives'

#### 6. [z] : [s]

The Bulgarian consonants [z] and [s], spelt with the letters *з* and *с* are similar to English [z] and [s].

задàча [za`dača]	'task, 'problem'
сàмо ['samо]	'only'
зима ['zima]	'winter'
сèдем ['sedem]	'seven'
прàзен ['pražen]	'empty'
лèсен ['lesen]	'easy'

The voiced consonant [z] is devoiced and pronounced as [s] at the end of words but is spelt with the letter *з*.

мрàз [mras]	'frost'
but: мразовѝт [mrazo`vit]	'frosty'
джаз ['džas]	'jazz'
but: джàзов [`džazof]	'jazz' (attr.)
газ [gas]	'gas'
but: гàзове ['gazove]	'gases'
In Russian:	
морòз [ma`ros]	'frost'
but: морозà [məra`za]	'frosts'

#### 7. [l]

In contrast to English [l], which is alveolar, the Bulgarian consonant [l], spelt with the letter *л* is dental and is formed with the tip of the tongue against the front teeth.

лак [lak]	'varnish'
лèсен ['lesen]	'easy'
писàтел [pi`satel]	'writer'

#### 8. [m] and [n]

The Bulgarian consonants [m] and [n], spelt with the letters *м* and *н* are similar to English [m] and [n].

морè [mo`re]	'sea'
нов [nof]	'new'
мнòро [`mnogo]	'a lot', 'much', 'many'
напрèд [na`pret]	'forward'
мèря ['merja]	'to measure'
пèсен ['pesen]	'song'

#### 9. [r]

The Bulgarian consonant [r], spelt with the letter *р* differs strongly from English [r] but is similar to some of its dialectical variants (e.g. Scottish rolled [r]). Bulgarian [r] is a rolled lingual sound (a trill) in which the tip of the tongue is made to vibrate.

рàдост [`radost]	'joy' (In Russian рàдость)
прòлет ['prolet]	'spring'
млекàп [mle`kar]	'milkman'

#### 10. [x]

The Bulgarian consonant [x], spelt with the letter *х* is quite different from English [h]. It is a voiceless velar fricative and is similar to Scottish [x] as in *loch*.

хòпа [`xora]	'people'
стìхове ['stixove]	'verses'
прах [prax]	'dust'
In Russian: хорошò [xəra'sho]	

#### 11. [č]

The Bulgarian consonant [č], spelt with the letter *ч* is quite similar to but slightly duller in quality than English [č] as in *child*.

чàкам [`čakam]	'to wait'
пазàч [pa`zač]	'guard'
пресèчка [pre`sečka]	'crossing'
In Russian: берèчь [be`rečj]	'to keep, guard'

## 12. [dž] : [ѓ]

The Bulgarian consonant [dž], spelt with the letters **ѓ** is similar to English [dž] as in **job, jazz**, etc. It occurs mainly in words of foreign origin.

джоб [džop]	'pocket'
дамаджана [dama`džana]	'demijohn'
джинси [`džinsi]	'a pair of jeans'

## 13. [c]

The Bulgarian consonant [c], spelt with the letter **ѫ** is similar to the final sound in English words such as **cats, beasts**, etc. In Bulgarian it occurs in initial, medial and final position.

целувам [ce`luvam]	'to kiss'
акция [`akcija]	'campaign'
подлещ [pod`lec]	'villain', 'scoundrel'
In Russian: цéлый [`tseləj]	'whole'

## 14. [j]

Bulgarian [j] is similar to the English semi-vowel [j] as in **yes, buy**, etc.

a) At the end of a word or before a consonant [j] is spelt with the letter **и**.

трамвай [tram`vaj]	'tram', in Russian трамвай
май [maj]	'May'
край [kraj]	'end'
геройски [ge`rojski]	'bravely'

b) When it occurs before [a] the combination of [j] + [a] is spelt with the letter **я**.

ям [jam]	'to eat'
хляб [xljap]	'bread'
вятър [`vyatər]	'wind'
In Russian дядя [`djadja]	'uncle'

c) When it occurs before [u] the combination of [j] + [u] is spelt with the letter **ю**.

люляк [`ljuljak]	'lilac'
бюджет [bju`džet]	'budget'
тютюн [tju`tjun]	'tobacco'

In Russian любовь [lju`bofj], Bulg. любов [lju`bof] 'love'

d) When it occurs before [o] the combination of [j] + [o] is spelt **ю** at the beginning of words and after vowels and **ю** in final syllables and after consonants.

йога [`joga]	'yoga'
шофьор [šo`fjor]	'driver'
Йордан [jor`dan]	'Yordan'
Кόльо [`koljo]	'Kolyo'
Бългàрийо [bəl`garijo]	(vocative form)

In Russian the word for 'driver, chauffeur' is шофёр [ša`fjor].

e) Occasionally [j] may occur before [e], mainly in words and names of foreign origin. It is then spelt with the letter **ѫ**.

иероглиф [jero`glif]	'hieroglyph'
иерархия [jé`raxija']	'hierarchy'
Йемен [`jemen]	'Yemen'

## Palatal consonants

### Палатални съгласни

Palatal consonants are an important characteristic feature of the Bulgarian consonantal system. They can be represented either as a combination of a consonant followed by an apostrophe (which stands for the soft sign) or as a combination of a consonant + [j] + [a], [u], [o] or [ə]. (The latter notation has been accepted in this textbook). Nearly all the consonants in Bulgarian have palatal counterparts before [a], [u], [o] and [ə]. Palatal consonants are distinctive in Bulgarian as can be seen by the different meanings of the word pairs:

бал [bal]	'ball'	:	бял [bjal]	'white'
гол [gol]	'naked'	:	гъол [gjol]	'puddle', 'pool'
лук [luk]	'onions'	:	люк [ljuk]	'man-hole'
луд [lut]	'mad'	:	лют [ljut]	'peppery, hot', 'pungent'
вървя [var`vja]			вървя [var`vja]	'to walk'
сънѧт [sə`njət]			сънѧт [sə`njət]	'the dream'

## Stress

### Ударение

The difference between stressed and unstressed syllables is much less pronounced in Bulgarian than in English. An English speaking learner

of Bulgarian may find it a little difficult to recognize the stressed syllables - at first glance all the syllables in an utterance may sound rather on the same level (to him/her).

While it is not easy but still possible to give some definite rules for the position of the stress in English words, Bulgarian word stress may fall on any syllable of a word.

It is dynamic, free and mobile.

Whereas in English words the stress most often falls on the first syllable, in Bulgarian as a whole it may fall on any syllable. In individual words, however, it is fixed.

Examples:

мàса [`masa] 'table' - stress on the first syllable

стèнà [ste`na] 'wall' - stress on the second syllable

картина [kar`tina] 'picture' - stress on the second syllable

осъзнàвам [osəz`navam] 'realize' - stress on the third syllable

активизàрам [aktivì`ziram] 'activate' - stress on the fourth syllable, etc.

In different forms of the same word the stress may shift from one syllable, to another:

град [grat] 'town' : градът [gra`dət] 'the town': градовè [grado`ve] 'towns'

диèта [di`eta] 'diet': диетичен [die`tichen] 'dietary'

Some pairs of words in Bulgarian (as well as in English) can be distinguished in meaning only by the position of the stress. In such cases the stress is indicated in Bulgarian printed material. Otherwise it is not usually indicated.

вълна [vəlna] 'wool' vs. вълнà [vəl`na] 'wave'(n.)

пари [`pari] 'vapours', 'steam' vs. 'парѝ [pa`ri] 'money'

четè [če`te] 'he/she reads' - present tense form, 3rd person singular

чète [`cete] 'he/she read' - Aorist past tense form, 3rd person singular

Even in loanwords the stress is often changed and the position of the stress of the word in Bulgarian may differ from the word stress in the language, from which the word was borrowed:

тунèл [tu`nel] vs. tunnel

бекòn [be`kon] vs. bacon

Learners should try to memorize each new word with its individual stress.

There is an important group of one-syllable words which are never stressed in Bulgarian. They are pronounced together with the

preceding or following word, to which they are phonetically attached, although they are written as separate words. These words belong to the following categories:

a) prepositions

за къдè [zakə`de] 'where to'

на пòкрива [na`pokriva] 'on the roof'

зад ъгъла [zad`əgəla] 'round the corner'

под нùлата [pod`nulata] 'under zero'

b) the negative particle *не* [ne] 'not'

не мòга [ne`moga] 'I cannot'

не ѹскам [ne`iskam] 'I don't want'

c) the future tense auxiliary particle *ще* [šte]

ще вали [števa`li] 'it will rain'

d) the interrogative particle *ли* [li]

ще дòйдеш ли [šte`dojdešli] 'will you come'

e) the conjunctions:

*и* [i] 'and'

*но* [no] 'but'

*а* [a] 'and', 'but'

*че* [če] 'that'

и тъй нататък [i`təjna`tatək] 'and so on'

"пòтят е стрàшен, но слàвен" [`pətjate `strašen no`slaven] 'the road is perilous but glorious'

f) the short forms of the dative and accusative personal pronouns,

e.g.:

кажѝ *ми* [ka`žimi] 'tell me'

видях *го* [vi`djaxgo] 'I saw him'

ще *я* покàня [štejapo`kanja] 'I will invite her'

But in negative forms of verbs these pronouns are stressed:

не *го* видях [ne`go vi`djax] 'I didn't see him'

не *ми* казвай [ne`mi `kazvaj] 'don't tell me'

g) the present tense forms of the auxiliary verb *съм* [səm] 'to be' are not stressed:

уморèн съм [umo`rensəm] 'I am tired'

уморèн си [umo`rensi] 'you are tired'

уморèн е [umo`rene] 'he is tired'

уморèна е [umo`renae] 'she is tired'

уморени сме [umo`renisme] 'we are tired'  
 уморени сте [umo`reniste] 'you are tired'  
 уморени са [umo`renisa] 'they are tired'

But in negative sentences the forms of *съм* are stressed:

не съм уморен [ne`səm umo`ren] 'I am not tired'  
 не си уморен [ne`sı umo`ren] 'you are not tired'  
 не е уморен [ne`e umo`ren] 'he is not tired'

Some Bulgarian words have *double stress*. These are:

a) the comparative and superlative particles of adjectives and adverbs.  
 The stress on the particle is stronger than the stress on the adjective or adverb:

пò-хùбav [`po`xubaf] 'prettier'  
 наѝ-хùбav [`naj`xubaf] 'prettiest'  
 пò-гнèвно [`po`gnevnɔ] 'more angrily'  
 наѝ-гнèвно [`naj`gnevno] 'most angrily'

b) compound nouns with the prefixes *нра-* [pra], *свръх-* [svrəx], *след-* [slet], *пред-* [pret]:

прàбългарски [`pra`bəlgarski] 'proto-Bulgarian'  
 свръхчовèк [svrəxčo`vek] 'superman'  
 слèдвоèнен [`sledvo`enən] 'postwar'  
 прèдосвобòжденски [`predosvobož`denski] 'preliberatory'  
 тъмносиѝн [təmno`sin] 'dark blue'  
 сèдемстòтин [`sedem`stotin] 'seven hundred'  
 контрапрòволюция [`kontrarevo`ljucija] 'counter-revolution'

There are also some words with two acceptable variants:

чèло/челò [`čelo/če`lo] 'forehead'  
 сèло/селò [`selo/se`lo] 'village'  
 масло/маслò [`maslo/mas`lo] 'butter'  
 вѝно/винò [`vino/vi`no] 'wine'

### Phonetic Alternations Фонемни реðувания

When two consonants stand together in a word or at word boundaries, one of them is affected by the other and becomes similar to it. This process is more active in Bulgarian than in English.

1. The second consonant affects the preceding one.

a) a voiceless consonant is voiced if it is before a voiced consonant.

Both are pronounced as voiced but the spelling is not changed:

сбор	[zbor] 'sum', 'total'
сгràда	[`zgrada] 'building'
отгòвàрьам	[odgov`arjam] 'to answer'
отдàвна	[od`davna] 'long ago'

In Russian:

екзàмен	[eg`zamen] 'exam'
---------	-------------------

b) a voiced consonant is devoiced if it is before a voiceless consonant. Both are pronounced as voiceless but the spelling is not changed:

рòбство	[`ropstvo] 'slavery'
вторник	[`ftornik] 'Tuesday'
вчёра	[`fčera] 'yesterday'
подпись	[`potpis] 'signature'
мъжки	[`məški] 'male'
ѝзток	[`istok] 'East' (n.)

In Russian:

вчера	[fče`ra] 'yesterday'
входитъ	[fxa`ditj] 'to enter'
свеж	[sveš] 'fresh' (in Russian <b>свèжий</b> )
клас	[klas] 'class' (in Russian <b>класс</b> )
книга	[`kniga] 'book' (in Russian <b>книга</b> )
тревà	[tre`va] 'grass' (in Russian <b>травà</b> )
смях	[smjax] 'laughter' (in Russian <b>смех</b> )
каквò	[kak`vo] 'what'
квàртира	[kvar`tira] 'rented place' (in Russian <b>квартѝра</b> 'flat')

This process is active at word boundaries, too.

Оttùk заминàват пèт групи.

[ot`tug zami`navat `ped `grupi]

'Five groups will be leaving from here.'

2. Voiced consonants are devoiced at the end of words (cf. pp. 10-11). This alteration is observed on the flow of speech even when the next word begins with a vowel or with the consonants [v], [l], [m], [n], [r], as well before the pause at the end of a sentence. The spelling of devoiced consonants does not change.

сняг няма	[`snjak `njama] 'there is no snow'
град Радомир	[`grat `radomir] 'the town of Radomir'
хубав мъж	[`xubaf məʃ] 'a handsome man'
млад лекар	[`mlat `lekar] 'a young doctor'
бърз влак	[`bərs `vlak] 'an express train'
хляб ѹмаме	[`xljab `imame] 'we have some bread'
град Елена	[`grat e`lena] 'the town of Elena'
слаб успех	[`slap us`pex] 'poor results'

An exception to this rule is the pronunciation of prepositions. The final consonant of a preposition remains unchanged before words beginning with a vowel or with the consonant [v], [l], [m], [n], [r].

a) the final voiced consonants of prepositions remain voiced:

из ѹлиците	[iz `ulicite] 'about the streets'
без вяра	[bez `vjara] 'without faith'
под липите	[`podli `pite] 'under the lime trees'
без музика	[bez `muzika] 'without music'
през ниви	[prez `nivi] 'through fields'
без ред	[bez `ret] 'without order'

In Russian:

без отдыха	[bez `otdəxa] 'without a rest'
------------	--------------------------------

b) the final voiceless consonants of prepositions remain voiceless:

от ръбота	[ot `rabota] 'from work'
от Варна	[ot `varna] 'from Varna'
с мени	[`smene] 'with me'
с любов	[slju `bof] 'with love'

In Russian:

с ѹтра до вечера	[sut `ra] 'from morning till night'
------------------	-------------------------------------

The preposition *с* [v] 'in/into' has a variant *със* [vəv] before words beginning with [v] or [f]:

във вагона	[vəvva `gona] 'in the carriage'
във филма	[vəf `filma] 'in the film'

The preposition *с* [v] is devoiced and pronounced as [f] before words beginning with a vowel or with the consonants [l], [m], [n], [r]. In fact all the alterations of this preposition are as if it is *ғ* but spelled as *с*:

в армията	[`farmijata] 'in the army'
в окото	[fo `koto] 'in the eye'
в лодката	[`flotkata] 'in the boat'

в магазина	[fmaga `zina] 'in the shop'
в небето	[fne `beto] 'in the sky'
в ресторантa	[fresto `ranta] 'in the restaurant'
In Russian this preposition in similar cases is pronounced as [v]:	
в армии	[`varmii]
в ресторана	[`resto `rane]

The preposition *с* [s] 'with', 'by' has a variant *със* [səs] before words beginning with [z] or [s]:

със заповед	[səs `zapovet] 'by order'
със сила	[səs `sila] 'by force'
със завист	[səs `zavist] 'with envy'
със смъх	[səs `smjax] 'with a laugh'

In Russian this preposition is always *с* (бороться с засухой 'to fight with the drought') with the exception of words beginning with *с*, *з* and forming a cluster of consonants. In such cases the preposition becomes *со*:

Как у вас *со* здоровъем? 'How are you with your health?'

### Alternation of [ja] and [e]

#### Редуване на я и е

In a number of words in Bulgarian [ja] alternates with [e] in related words (derived from the same root).

The sound [ja] occurs when it is in a stressed syllable, preceding a syllable with the vowels [a], [o], [u] in final position and when it is not followed by [ž], [č], [š]:

мърка	[`mjarka]	'measure'
мляко	[`mljako]	'milk'
вятър	[`vjatər]	'wind'
пях	[pjax]	'I sang'
пя	[pja]	'he/she sang'

In all other cases [ja] alternates with [e]:

a) when there is [i] or [e] in the following syllable:			
бял	[bjal] 'white'	бели	[`beli] 'white' (pl.)
цил	[cjal] 'whole'	цели	[`celi] 'whole' (pl.)
вяра	[`vjara] 'faith'	верен	[`veren] 'faithful'
голям	[go `ljam] 'big'	големи	[go `leme] 'big' (pl.)

Exceptions are the forms of минало свършено и минало

несвършено време for the 1st and 2nd person plural: вървяхме, вървяхте; живяхме, живяхте.

b) when the stress shifts and the [ja]-syllable remains in unstressed position:

сняг [snjak]	'snow'	снегове [snego've]	'snows'
бряг [brjak]	'shore'	брегове [brego've]	'shores'
мляко [mljako]	'milk'	млекàр [mle'kar]	'milkman'
место [mjasto]	'place'	местà [me'sta]	'places'
вятър [vyatər]	'wind'	ветрове [vetro've]	'winds'
c) when the following syllable begins with [ž], [č], [š]:			
гръх [grjax]	'sin'	грèшка [greška]	'mistake'
сняг [snjak]	'snow'	снèжна [snežna]	'snowy'
мляко [mljako]	'milk'	млèчна [mlečna]	'milky'

In all these cases in Russian the vowel is [e]:

снег 'snow', грех 'sin', ветер 'wind', место 'place', берег 'coast', вера 'faith', цèлый 'whole', белый 'white', мера 'measure', петь 'to sing'.

#### Vowel - Zero alternation

The vowel [ə] and [e] are inserted in a large number of Bulgarian words to make the pronunciation easier, (similar to the insertion of [ə] in the English word ladder, Middle English laddr). The vowels are inserted between combinations of the consonants [v], [b], [g], [d], [z], etc. with the consonants [m], [n], [l], [r].

мèтър [metər]	'metre'
тигър [tigər]	'tiger'
кòсъм [kosəm]	'a hair'
дèн [den]	'day'
конèц [ko'nec]	'thread'
петèл [pe'tel]	'cock', 'rooster'

The vowel is preserved in the form with the article but dropped in the plural forms of the nouns.

мèтър - мèтърът [metərət]	'metre' - 'the metre'
мèтри [metri]	'metres'
тигър - тигърът [tigərət]	'tiger' - 'the tiger'
тигри [tigri]	'tigers'
кòсъм - кòсъмът [kosəmət]	'a hair' - 'the hair'
кòсми [kosmi]	'hairs'

дèн - денят [de'njət]

днѝ [dni]

конèц - конèцът [ko'necət]

конци [kon'ci]

петел - петèлът [pe'telət]

петли [pet'li]

'day' - 'the day'

'days'

'thread' - 'the thread'

'threads'

'cock, rooster' - 'the cock'

'cocks'

The vowels [ə] and [e] alternate with zero in the forms of adjectives. The masculine singular forms contain a vowel which is left out in the feminine, neuter and plural forms. It is also dropped when the article is added to the masculine singular form of the adjectives.

добър студèнт	[do'bər stu'dent] 'good student' (male)
добра студèнтика	[do'bra stu'dentka] 'good student' (female)
добрò здрàве	[do'bro'zdrave] 'good health'
добrìят певèц	[do'brijət pe'vec] 'the good singer'
лèсен урòк	[lesen u'rok] 'an easy lesson'
лèсна задàча	[lesna za'dača] 'an easy problem'
лèсно упражнèние	[lesno uprazl'enie] 'an easy exercise'
лèсни въпроси	[lesni vəp'rosi] 'easy questions'
нàй-лèсният урòк	[naj'lesnijət u'rok] 'the easiest lesson'

The [ə] sound in the Past Active Participles ending in -аl [əl] alternates with zero in the same way:

дошèл	[do'səl] 'he has come'
дошлà	[do's'la] 'she has come'
дошлò	[do's'lo] 'it has come' (neut.)
дошлѝ	[do's'li] 'they have come' (pl.)

#### Metathesis

#### Memæzea

In a number of related words the vowel [ə] alternates and appears before or after the consonants [r] and [l] - [ər], [əl] or [rə], [lə].

a) in one-syllable words [ə] usually follows the consonants [r] and [l]:

връх [vrəx] 'top'

гръб [grəp] 'back'

гръд [grət] 'chest'

кръв [krəf] 'blood'

млък [mlək] 'shut up'

плъх [pləx] 'rat'

Exceptions:

бърз [bərs] 'fast'

твърд [tvərt] 'hard'

вълк [vəlk] 'wolf'

жълт [zəlt] 'yellow'

b) in words with more than one syllable the position of [ə] depends on the number of consonants following [r] and [l].

If there is only one consonant following [r] and [l], then the combination [ər] and [əl] are used:

зърно [zərno]	'grain'
върза [vərza]	'he/she tied'
дърво [dər'vo]	'tree'
въртъ [vər'tjə]	'to turn'
върхове [vər'xo've]	'tops'
държà [dər'žə]	'to hold'

Exceptions:

гръмоглъсен [grəmo'glasen] 'loud', 'ringing'

плъхове [pləxove] 'rats'

If there is more than one consonant following [r], [l], then the combination [rə] and [lə] are used:

връзвам [vərəzvam]	'to tie'
дръвцè [drəf'ce]	'stick', 'a small tree'
гърнчàр [grən'čar]	'potter'
зрънце [zrənce]	'a small grain'
глътка [glətka]	'gulp'
млъкна [mləkna]	'he/she fell silent'

Exceptions:

мръсен [mrəsen] 'dirty'

повърхност [po'vərxnost] 'surface'

сълзлив [səlzlif] 'tearful', 'tear' (attr.)

In related with some of these words in Russian the combination of sounds is usually [-er-] and such metathesis (as in Bulgarian) doesn't occur:

дèрево 'tree', верх 'top', вертèть 'to turn', держàть 'to hold', повèрхность 'surface'.

### Phonetic Alternations

In a number of words in Bulgarian the consonants [g], [x], [k] alternate with the consonants [ž], [š], [č] in the various forms of one and the same word or in related words derived from the same root.

мòга [moga] 'I can'	мòжеш [mozleš] 'you can'
пекà [pe'kə] 'to bake'	печèш [pe'češ] 'you bake'
другà [dru'gar] 'friend'	дружба [druz1ba] 'friendship'
смàх [smjax] 'laughter'	смèшен [smešen] 'funny'
тих [tix] 'quiet'	тишинà [tiši`na] 'silence'
висòк [vi'sok] 'tall, high'	височина [visoči`na] 'height'.

In Russian there are similar alternations:

могù 'I can'	можеши 'you can'
пекù 'I bake'	печеши 'you bake'
друг 'friend'	дружба 'friendship'
смех 'laughter'	смешинòй 'funny'
тихий 'quiet'	тишинà 'silence'

The consonants [g], [k], [x] as endings of masculine singular nouns alternate with [z], [c], [s] in the plural forms of the nouns:

пòдлог [`podlok] 'subject'	пòдлози [`podlozi] 'subjects'
каталòг [kata'lok] 'catalogue'	каталòзи [kata'lozi] 'catalogues'
ученик [uče'nik] 'schoolboy'	ученици [uče'nic] 'schoolboys'
прàзник [`praznik] 'holiday'	прàзници [`praznici] 'holidays'
стомàх [sto'max] 'stomach'	стомàчи [sto'masi] 'stomachs'
кожùк [ko'žuk] 'fur coat'	кожùси [ko'žusi] 'fur coats'

Exceptions:

митинг [`mitink] 'rally/meeting' митинги [`mitingi] 'meetings'

успèх [us'pex] 'success' успèхи [us'pexi] 'successes' (pl.)

фойервèрк [`fojerverk] 'firework' фойерверки [`fojerverki] 'fireworks' (pl.)

In Russian these consonants remain unchanged in the plural:

ученик 'schoolboy'	ученикù 'schoollboys'
мàльчик 'boy'	мàлчики 'boys'
монах 'monk'	монахи 'monks'
диалòг 'dialogue'	диалòги 'dialogues'

Vowel alternation occurs in some cognate words and in the different morphological forms of a number of words.

1. [o] \_\_ [a]

да отговòря [odgo`vorja] 'to answer' (perfective aspect)  
отговàрям [odgo`varjam] 'to answer' (imperfective)

да отвòря [ot`vorja] 'to open' (perfective aspect)  
отвàрям [ot`varjam] 'to open' (imperfective)

да затвòря [zat`vorja] 'to close' (perfective aspect)  
затвàрям [zat`varjam] 'to close' (imperfective)

2. [e] \_\_ [a]

да изнесà [izne`sə] 'to take out' (perfective)  
изнàсям [iz`nasjam] 'to take out' (imperfective)

да понесà [pone`sə] 'to endure' (perfective)  
понàсям [[po`nasjam] 'to endure' [imperfective]  
да донесà [done`sə] 'to bring' (perfective)  
донàсям [do`nasjam] 'to bring' (imperfective)

3. [e] \_\_ [i]

метà [me`ta] 'to sweep'  
измítам [iz`mitam] 'to sweep away/off'

текà [te`kə] 'to flow, run'  
изтичам [is`tičam] 'to flow, run out'

да отвleкà [otvle`kə] 'to kidnap' (perfective)  
отвliчам [ot`vličam] 'to kidnap/carry off' (imperfective)

4. [e] \_\_ [o]

да внесà [vne`sə] 'to import'  
внòс [vnos] 'import' (n.)

да принесà [prine`sə] 'to contribute'  
прìнос [`prinos] 'contribution'

берà [be`ra] 'to pick/gather'  
собòр [zbor] 'gathering', 'sum'; избор [`izbor] 'choice'

## MORPHOLOGY МОРФОЛОГИЯ

### 1. NOUNS

#### Съществителни имена

According to their lexical meaning nouns are usually classified into:

a) common nouns:

ст�л 'chair'	ст�дент 'student'
улица 'street'	щ�стие 'happiness'
ч�тение 'reading'	м�ка 'sorrow'

b) proper nouns:

България 'Bulgaria'	С�фия 'Sofia'
Д�нав 'the Danube river'	Р�ла 'the Rila mountain'
Петров 'Petrov'	Ст�йнови 'the Stoyanovs'

#### Gender

#### Род

While in English most of the nouns have the same form for the masculine, feminine and neuter gender, in Bulgarian the gender of the nouns is morphologically indicated by the word ending.

a) Masculine nouns usually have a consonant ending:

гр�д 'town'	п�т 'road'
пис�тель 'writer'	обу��р 'shoemaker'
пр�мър 'example'	гер�й 'hero'

In Russian these words are also of masculine gender:

г ород, путь, пис тель, сап ожник, прим р, гер й.

Exceptions are certain nouns ending in -а, -я (the typical feminine gender markers), or in -о, -е, -и (the typical neuter gender markers), which denote persons of natural masculine sex:

ба�а 'father'	слуг� 'servant'
род�нина 'relative'	съдий 'judge'
пияница 'drunkard'	С�ва 'Sava' (usu. a man's name)
юноша 'youth, adolescent'	
ч�чио 'uncle'	д�дю 'grandfather/old man'

аташ  'ambassador/attach '

П тко 'Petko'

К льо 'Kolyo'

Г орги 'Georgi'

In Russian language there are similar exceptions (masculine nouns ending in a vowel):

п па 'daddy'

муж на 'man'

юноша 'youth'

Ал ша 'a man's name'

д дя 'uncle'

К стя 'a man's name'

b) Feminine nouns usually end in -а, -я:

ученичка 'schoolgirl'

ч нта 'bag'

хран  'food'

вод  'water'

глав  'head'

книга 'book'

град на 'garden'

р окля 'dress'

сп лня 'bedroom'

к хня 'kitchen'

In Russian similarly nouns ending in -а and -я are feminine:  
ученица 'schoolgirl', с мка 'bag', к хня 'kitchen'

Exceptions in Bulgarian are some nouns with consonant endings and some abstract nouns:

радост 'joy'

скр б 'sorrow'

с утрин 'morning'

в ечер 'evening'

с л 'salt'

но щ 'night'

 сен 'autumn'

пр лет 'spring'

кр в 'blood'

з хар 'sugar'

в л ст 'power'

мл дост 'youth'

In Russian similar exceptions are (usually ending in a consonant + ь):

радость 'joy', скр б 'sorrow', с л 'salt', но щ 'night',  сен 'autumn',

кровь 'blood', в л ст 'power', юность 'youth', etc.

c) Neuter nouns usually end in -о, -е:

ч ло 'forehead'

им  'name'

з лato 'gold'

общ житие 'hostel'

In Russian: з лoto, общ житие 'gold' 'hostel'

Other common neuter endings are -и and -y, mostly in words of foreign origin:

такс  'taxi'

биж  'piece of jewelry'

ж ри 'jury'

меню 'menu'

A large number of diminutive nouns also bear the neuter markers:

брàтче	'a small brother'
сест्रìче	'a small sister'

### Number Число

Both in Bulgarian and in English countable nouns have singular and plural forms. In contrast to English, however, Bulgarian has a variety of endings for the plural.

#### A. Masculine Nouns

Monosyllabic masculine nouns most frequently take the ending **-ове** [ove] to form plural forms:

стòл - столòве	'chairs'
хлàб - хлàбове	'loaves of bread'
грàд - градове	'towns/cities'
цвàт - цветове	'colours'

Some nouns with homonymous singular forms have two different plural forms, which mark the difference in meaning:

клòн	клòнове	'fields/branches (of science)'
	клòни	'branches (of a tree)'
пàт	пàти	'times' (once, three times)
	пàтища	'roads'

Monosyllabic masculine nouns which end in **-ий** in the singular get the ending **-еве** [eve] for the plural:

бòй - боевè	'battles/fights'
стрòй - стрòеве	'systems/orders'

Some monosyllabic masculine nouns form plurals with the ending **-и**. They are usually masculine nouns denoting national origin as well as some other words.

чèх - чèхи	'Czechs'
швèд - швèди	'Swedes'
грòк - грòци	'Greeks'
гòст - гòсти	'guests'

зòб - зòби	'teeth'
фìлм - фìлми	'films'

Only 5 monosyllabic masculine nouns form plurals with the ending **-е:**

мòж - мòжè	'men'
кòн - конè	'horses'
кràл - кралè	'kings'
цàр - царè	'kings'
княз - князè	'princes'
-а	
кràк - кракà	'feet/legs'
рòг - рогà	'horns'
-я	
брàт - брàти	'brothers'
-ища	
сèн - сèнища	'dreams'
пàт - пàтища	'roads', 'ways'

Polysyllabic masculine nouns generally take the ending **-и** in the plural:

булевàрд - булевàрди	'boulevards'
учàтел - учàтели	'teachers'
преподавàтел - преподавàтели	'lecturers'
вèстник - вèстници	'newspapers'
рèчник - рèчници	'dictionaries'

When a polysyllabic masculine noun ends in **-ий** it is replaced by **-и** in the plural:

герòй - герòи	'heroes'
трамвàй - трамвàи	'trams/streetcars'
слàвей - слàвеи	'nightingales'

Polysyllabic masculine nouns ending in **-а** or **-я** get the ending **-и** in the plural:

башà - башàи	'fathers'
роднìна - роднìни	'relatives'
съдàй - съдàи	'judges'

Polysyllabic masculine nouns with the ending **-ин** (usually denoting ethnic origin or occupation) drop the ending **-ин** and get the ending **-и** in the plural:

българин - българи	'Bulgarians'
селянин - селяни	'peasants'
гражданин - граждани	'citizens'

#### Notes:

a) Some polysyllabic words form the plural with the ending **-ове**:

вятър - ветрове	'winds'
огън - огньове	'fires'
център - центрове	'centres'

b) In a number of nouns the vowels **-е-** and **-ъ-** from the final syllable of the singular forms are dropped in the plural:

прозорец - прозорци	'windows'
дърводелец - дърводелци	'carpenters'
театър - театри	'theatres'
литър - литри	'litres'

c) When there is a vowel preceding the ending **-еи** in the singular, the **-е-** of the ending is replaced by **-й- [j]** in the plural forms:

нигериец - нигерийци	'Nigerians'
кениеци - кенийци	'Kenyans'
европеец - европеици	'Europeans'

d) Nouns ending in **-к**, **-г**, **-х** in the singular are changed to **-ц**, **-з**, **-е** in the plural:

войник - войници	'soldiers'
речник - речници	'dictionaries'
каталог - каталози	'catalogues'
бълег - бълези	'scars'
стомах - стомаси	'stomachs'
кожух - кожуси	'fur coats'

In Russian the formation of plural of masculine nouns is different - they usually add the ending **-ы** or **-а**:

стол - столы	'tables'
глаз - глаза	'eyes'
город - города	'towns'

#### B. Feminine Nouns

The feminine plural ending is **-и**:

женя - жени	'women'
бания - бани	'bathrooms'

армия - армии	'armies'
нощ - нощи	'nights'
болест - болести	'diseases'

In Russian it is either **-ы** or **-и**:

жъцина - жъцини	'women'
картина - картины	'pictures'
линия - линии	'rulers'

Exceptions in Bulgarian:

ръка - ръцѣ	'hands/arms'
овца - овцѣ	'sheep'
свиня - свинѣ	'swines/pigs'

The vowels **-ъ-** and **-е-** in final syllables are sometimes dropped in the plural forms:

мисъл - мисли	'thoughts'
съблазън - съблазни	'temptations'
песен - песни	'songs'

#### C. Neuter nouns

Neuter nouns ending in **-о**, **-ло**, **-ало**, **-ило**, **-це**, **-енце**, **-ище** get the ending **-а** in the plural:

село - села	'villages'
езеро - езера	'lakes'
одеало - одеала	'blankets'
кормило - кормилà	'steering wheels'
сърцѣ - сърца	'hearts'
момиченце - момиченца	'little girls'
училище - училища	'schools'

In Russian:

окно - окна	'windows'
письмо - письма	'letters'

Neuter nouns ending in **-е**, **-тие**, **-ние** get the ending **-я** in the plural:

условие - условия	'conditions'
събитие - събития	'events'
събрание - събрания	'meetings'

In Russian **-условие** - **условия**, **събитие** - **събития**, **собрание** - **собрания**.

Neuter nouns ending in **-е**, **-че**, and **-не** as well as neuter nouns of

foreign origin ending in **-и**, **-у**, **-ю** get the ending **-ета** or **-та** in the plural:

пердè - пердèта	'curtains'
морè - морèта	'seas'
момѝче - момѝчета	'girls'
пѝле - пѝлете	'chickens'
таксѝ - таксѝта	'taxis'
меню - менюта	'menus'

In Russian these nouns get different endings - e.g. **мòре** - **морѝ**, while borrowed words as **пальтò**, **таксѝ** are the same form in singular and in plural.

A number of neuter nouns ending in **-ме** get the suffix **-ена** in the plural. The stress on the final syllable of the plural forms:

име - имена	'names'
врèме - времена	'times'
сèме - семена	'seeds'
плèме - племена	'tribes'

In Russian there is a group of similar nouns:

**ѝмя** - имена, **врèмя** - времена, **сèмя** - семена, **плèмя** - племена.

#### Exceptions in Bulgarian:

окò - очи	'eyes'
ухò - уши	'ears'
живòтно - живòтни	'animals'
насекòмо - насекòми	'insects'
чùдо - чудеса	'miracles'
детè - деца	'children'
цвèте - цветя	'flowers'
рàмо - рамена	'shoulders'
коляно - коленà	'knees'

#### D. Singulària tantum

There are a lot of nouns in Bulgaria which normally occur only in the singular:

abstract nouns	
патриотизм	'patriotism'
идеализм	'idealism'
любòв	'love'

дèтство	'childhood'
names of substances or mass nouns:	
кислорòд	'oxygen'
вìздух	'air'
олòво	'lead'
орìз	'rice'
сòл	'salt'
горчѝца	'mustard'

#### E. Pluralia tantum

Nouns which occur only in the plural usually denote objects which consist of two equivalent parts:

очилà	'spectacles'
клèши	'pliers'
везñи	'scales'

Some collective mass nouns also occur only in the plural:

макарòни	'macaroni'
вìглища	'coals'
разнòски	'expenses'

#### F. The 'Count' Plural

Masculine nouns have a special 'count' form ending in **-а** or **-я**, which is used after cardinal numerals **два**, **три**, **сто** (two, three, a hundred, etc.) and the words **колко** (how many/how much), **няколко** 'some/several', **толкова** 'so/that many/that much':

Singular	Plural	'Count' Plural
град	градовè	двà гràда
слàвей	слàвеи	три слàвеи
слон	слонове	пет слòна
стол	стòлове	няколко стòла
мòлив	мòливи	кòлко мòлива

The vowels [ə] and [e] in final syllables are preserved in the 'count' forms:

Singular	Plural	'Count' Plural
позорец	прозòрци	чëтири прозòрца
венец	венци	няколко венèца
кòсъм	кòсми	двà кòсъма
òгън	огниòве	три òгъня

теа́тър	теа́три	кòлко теа́търа	'how many theatres'
<b>Exceptions:</b>			
мèтър	мèтри	дèсет мèтра	'ten metres'
лítър	лítри	сèдем лítтра	'seven litres'
киломèтър	киломèтри	кòлко киломèтра	'how many kilometres'

In Russian Genitive case is used for counting masculine nouns - from 1 to 4 - singular form, and from 5 on - plural form:

час 'an hour'      два часà      пять часòв '5 hours'  
рубль 'a ruble'      два рублй      пять рублëй '5 rubles'

### G. The Vocative

The vocative forms are used in direct address.

1) The endings **-е**, **-о**, **-ио** are added to masculine nouns:

Ивàн	Ивàне	'Ivan'
сìn	сìне	'my son'
грàжданин	грàжданино	'citizen'
приятел	приятелю	'my friend'

Examples:

Ивàне, ще дòйдеш ли с нас на кѝно?	'Ivan, are you coming to the cinema with us?'
Сìне, сбòгом и пазì се!	'Farewell, my son and take care!'

2) The ending **-о** is added to feminine nouns:

мàйка	мàйко	'mother'
родѝна	родѝно	'motherland'

Examples:

"О, мàйко мòя, родѝно мìла, зашò тый жàлно, тый мìлно плàчеш?"	'Oh, mother mine, Dear land of my birth, Why do you cry so bitterly, dismally?'
---	--

/Христо Ботев/      (Hristo Botev, Translated by  
Peter Tempest)

Neuter and plural nouns have no vocative forms.  
There are no vocative forms in Russian language.

### Determination of Nouns

#### Членуване на съществителните имена

In contrast to English which has a definite and an indefinite article, the Bulgarian language has only a definite article. The article is part of the word and is always placed at the end. It is added to nouns or attributes qualifying nouns. Both in English and in Bulgarian the definite article co-occurs with noun phrases when they refer to things that have been mentioned before.

In Russian there is no definite article and other means of the language are used for the idea of defining - cases, word order, context, lexical means, the aspect of verbs, etc.

The forms of the article in Bulgarian are different for the three genders of the nouns and for the plural forms.

стòлът	the chair	сèлото	the village
мàсата	the table	градовèте	the towns

#### A. Forms of the Definite Article for Masculine Nouns

Masculine nouns have a full and a short form of the definite article depending on the syntactic function of the Noun Phrase. The full form is used when a noun phrase functions as a Subject or Predicative and the short form is used for the rest of the syntactic functions.

Full forms: **-ът** [ət] or **-ят** [jət]

Short forms: **-а** [ə] or **-я** [jə]

a) Nouns ending in a consonant most frequently get the forms **-ът** and **-а**:

Noun	Full form	Short form
стòл	стòлът	стòла 'the chair'
зъб	зъбът	зъба 'the tooth'
снàг	снегът	снега 'the snow'

b) Nouns formed with the suffixes **-ап** or **-тел** usually denoting persons, get the article forms **-ят** and **-я**:

Noun	Full form	Short form
секретàр	секретàрят	секрета́р 'the secretary'
преподавàтел	преподавàтелят	преподава́теля 'the lecturer'
писàтел	писателят	писа́теля 'the writer'

c) The same forms (-ят and -я) are added to nouns ending in -й and to 10 exceptions to the general rule.

Noun	Full form	Short form	
герой	героят	героя	'the hero'
трамвай	трамвяят	трамвая	'the tram'
дён	денят	день	'the day'
зёт	зетят	зётя	'the son-in-law'
кён	кёнят	кёня	'the horse'
крал	кралят	крала	'the king'
нокът	нокътят	нокътя	'the (finger)nail'
лакът	лакътят	лакътя	'the elbow'
огън	огънят	огъня	'the fire'
път	пътят	пътя	'the road/way'
сън	сънят	съня	'the dream'
цар	царят	царя	'the tsar'

**Exceptions:**

d) Masculine nouns ending in -а or -я get the article form -та (for feminine nouns):

колега	колегата	'the colleague'
съдия	съдията	'the judge'

Masculine nouns ending in -о or -е get the article form -то (for neuter gender):

дядо	дядото	'the grandfather'
крупиè	крупиèто	'the croupier'
конферансиè	конферансиèто	'the announcer'

e) Masculine nouns preserve the vowel [ə], spelt -ъ- when the definite article is added:

Noun	Full form	Short form	
вятър	вятърът	вятъра	'the wind'
косъм	косъмът	косъма	'the hair'
театър	театърът	театъра	'the theatre'
метър	метърът	метъра	'the metre'

Exceptions are nouns of foreign origin with the suffixes -изъм or -азъм:

Noun	Full form	Short form	
патриотизъм	патриотизъмът	патриотизма	'the patriotism'
ентусиазъм	ентусиазъмът	ентусиазма	'the enthusiasm'

**B. The Definite Article for Feminine Nouns**

All feminine nouns get the article -та in the singular:

вода	водата	'the water'
стая	стаята	'the room'
нощ	нощта	'the night'

When the article is added to feminine nouns ending in -т the letter т is doubled:

пролет	пролеттa	'the spring'
старост	старосттa	'the old age'

**C. The Definite Article for Neuter Nouns**

All neuter nouns get the article -то in the singular:

леглò	леглòто	'the bed'
морè	морèто	'the sea'
такси	такситo	'the taxi'

**D. The Definite Article for the Plural**

The forms of the article depend on the final vowel of the plural noun forms and that could be called vocal harmony.

a) The nouns ending in -е or -и in the plural get the article -те:

Singular	Plural	Plural + Article	
стол	столове	столовете	'the chairs'
княз	князè	князèте	'the prices'
звук	звукци	звуките	'the sounds'
борбà	борбì	борбите	'the struggles'

b) The nouns ending in -а or -я in the plural get the article -та:

Singular	Plural	Plural + Article	
път	пътища	пътищата	'the roads'
брàт	брàти	брàтита	'the brothers'
детè	десà	десàта	'the children'
пìле	пìлета	пìлетата	'the chickens'

## USE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

### Употреба на определителния член

1. The definite article is added to nouns when they are in **Subject** position. (When the noun in Subject position has been mentioned before and is known to the speaker and to the listener.)

Note: Masculine nouns in Subject position get the full form of the article **-ът** or **-ят**.

Преподавателят влѣзе в  
ст ята.

Преподавателят беше болен.

Резулт тът ще б де добър.

Книгата не е интересна.

Каф то е готово.

Магазините са в че затворени.

Трудни ли са упражн нията  
в учебника?

The definite article is often added to nouns in Subject position when they co-occur with the verbs **съм** 'to be', **наричам се**, **к звам се** 'to be called', **изгл ждам** 'seem/appear', **ок звам се** 'turn out to be', etc.

#### Examples:

Б лгарите са гостопри мни.

Преподавателката се к зва

Мария Пенева

Кур ртът се нарича

Пампорово.

Упражн нието ми изгл жда  
трудно.

Задачите се ок заха д ста  
л сни.

2. The definite article is added to nouns when they are in **Object** position. (The aspect of the verb affects the use of the definite article in Object position - more often the perfective aspect will require nouns with the definite article, and imperfective aspect verbs - nouns with no article).

Note: Masculine nouns in Object position get the short form of the article **-а** or **-я**.

'The lecturer entered the  
room.'

'The lecturer was ill.'

'The result will be good.'

'The book is not interesting.'

'The coffee is ready.'

'The shops are already  
closed.'

'Are the exercises in the  
textbook difficult?'

#### Examples:

П ша писм  (ст тия).

Написах в че писм то  
(ст тията).

Об чам да ям зелеч ци.

Из дохте ли хл ба,  
мес то и зеленч ците?

The definite article is usually added to nouns used after prepositions as adverbials.

#### Examples:

Ст лът въгъла е счупен.

Ког  ще тр гн ш за г рата?

Заш  не с днеш до прозор ца?

Подълж къ да п ша в преки  
забраната на л карите.

Спор д пр вилника на страната,  
на шоф рите се забранява  
употр бата на алкох л.

'I am writing a letter (a  
paper).'

'I've already finished the letter  
(the paper).'

'I like eating vegetables.'

'Have you eaten up the bread,  
the meat and the vegetables?'

'The chair in the corner is broken.'

'When are you leaving for the station?'

'Why don t you sit by the window?'

'I haven t given up smoking in  
spite of doctors orders.'

According to the traffic  
laws of the country drivers  
are not allowed to use any  
alcohol.'

#### 3. The article is not added to nouns in the following cases:

a) when the nouns co-occur with the impersonal verbs **има** 'there is/there are', **няма** 'there isn t/there aren t', provided the Object is not doubled by a personal pronoun (This rule applies to English language, too).

#### Examples:

Има ли з хар в ч я?

Н ма вр еме.

Н ма ли п ликове и  
картички в п щата?

Н ма ли го д ще новото  
списание?

'Is there any sugar in the tea?'

'There is no time.'

'Aren t there any envelopes  
and postcards at the postoffice?'

'Hasn t the new magazine been  
delivered yet?'

In the last example the object is doubled and the definite article is added.

b) The article is not added to nouns like **д жд** 'rain', **сн г** 'snow', **гр д** 'hail', **п с ** 'dew', etc., when they combine with verbs like **вали** (it rains/snows/hails, etc.) **р м ** (it drizzles) etc.

Валѝ снѝг.

'It's snowing.'

Ще валѝ пороен дъжд.

'Heavy showers are expected.'

c) In most cases the article is not added to nouns derived from numerals when they are in Object position.

Приятелката ми получи  
двойка на изпита.

'My girlfriend got a poor mark  
(a two) at the exam.'

d) Some nouns which occur in prepositional phrases or in phraseological units (idioms, proverbs and sayings) are used without an article.

Examples:

От трън та на глòг.

'Out of the frying-pan - into the fire.'

Приятелите ми влязоха  
в спòр.

'My friends engaged in an argument.'

Намирах се в затруднèние,

'I was in a difficult position

но не изпаднах в отчаяние.

'but I did not despair.'

e) Usually the article is not added to nouns used in most cases after the preposition без 'without', с/със 'with/by', но 'on/in/about'.

Examples:

Напрàвих контролното без

'I have no (a lot of)

грèшки (с много грèшки).

mistakes in my test.'

ѝскам да си кùпя

'I'd like to buy the text book

учёбника по електрòнико. on electronics.'

When the same preposition shows relations in space the noun is used with the definite article.

Вървѝ по улицата.

'I'm walking along the street.'

f) The article is not added to the second noun in phrases like:

бутилка вѝно

'a bottle of wine'

пакèт бисквѝти

'a packet of biscuits'

кутия кибрѝт

'a box of matches'

g) The article is not added to proper nouns and to nouns denoting titles, scientific degrees or kinship relations:

доктор Соколов

'Doctor Sokolov'

профèсор Рàдев

'Professor Radev'

генерàл Займов

'General Zaimov'

чѝчо Стèфан

'Uncle Stephen'

лèля Нàдка

'Aunt Nadka'

h) The article is not added to nouns which combine with proper

nouns of the following type:

град Бургàс

'the town of Bourgas'

сèло Ковачèвци

'the village of Kovachevtsi'

река Дùнав

'the Danube river'

ùлица "Витоша"

'Vitosha Street'

булевàрд "Рùски"

'Rouski boulevard'

кино "Сердика"

'the Serdika cinema'

ресторàнт "Златна рибка"

'the 'Zlatna Ribka' restaurant'

вèстник "Труд"

'the 'Trud' newspaper'

but:

пустѝната Сахàра

'the Sahara desert'

èзерото Виктория

'the lake Victoria'

òперата "Айда"

'the opera Aida'

фильмът "Кабарè"

'the film Cabaret'

ромàнът "Оливър Туйст"

'the novel Oliver Twist'

пиèсата "Отèло"

'the play Othello'

i) The article is not added to nouns with adverbial function used with the preposition на 'on/at/to'

Мàйка ми е на рàбота.

'My mother is at work.'

Отѝвам на училище.

'I'm going to school. (because I am a student there)'

Ще хòдя на тèатър.

'I'll go to the theatre. (to see a play)'

The article is added, however, when the nouns are used in prepositional phrases with the preposition в/във 'in/into' and denote concrete destinations:

Отѝвам в тèатъра.

'I'm going into the theatre.'

(I work there)

j) The article is not added to verbal nouns formed with the suffix -не, functioning as time adverbials:

Ще се отбѝя у вас на врьшкане.

'I'll call on you on my way back.'

Тръгнахме на разсъмване.

'We started at dawn.'

k) The article is not added to nouns combined with the prepositions без, в, на, по, чрез, до, около, за, от, functioning as adverbials of manner, quality, extend, purpose, motive, etc.

Examples:

Студèнтът говори бùлгарски

'The student speaks Bulgarian'

без грешки.

Хòрата се двíжеха  
на грùпи.

Постигнали са тèзи успехи  
чрез труòд и постóйнство.

Наядох се до насита.

Върнахме се за вечёра.

Спрàхме край рекàта  
на почíвка.

Девòйката плàчеше  
от радост.

When generalizing in the singular in both languages (English and Bulgarian) the definite article is added:

Кòнят е интелигèнто жи-  
вòтно.

But in the plural in Bulgarian the article is added while in English the idea of generalization is conveyed with no article.

Конèте са интелигèнти жи-  
вòтни.

Мъжете харèсват жени с  
минало, а жените - мъжè  
с бòдеще.

without any mistakes.'

'People were moving about  
in groups.'

'They've achieved their success  
through hard work and persistence.'

'I've eaten my fill.'

'We came back for  
supper.'

'We stopped by the river to  
take a rest.'

'The young girl was weeping  
for joy.'

'The horse is an intelligent  
animal'

'Horses are intelligent  
animals.'

'Men like women with past  
and women like men with  
future.' (Oscar Wilde)

## FORMATION OF NOUNS ОБРАЗУВАНЕ НА СЪЩЕСТВИТЕЛНИТЕ ИМЕНА

### A. Suffixation

Bulgarian nouns are formed mainly by suffixation - that is by adding various suffixes to verbs, nouns and adverbs.

#### Masculine Nouns

1) The suffix **-ач** is added to verbal bases to form Agent and Instrument nouns. The suffix is highly productive and always stressed.

брьсна	'to shave'	:	брьснàч	'razor'
игràя	'to play'	:	игràч	'player'
продàвам	'to sell'	:	продавàч	'shop- assistant'
вòдя	'to lead'	:	водàч	'leader/guide'

2) The suffix **-ап** is added to verbal and nominal bases to form Agent nouns which denote professions. It is generally stressed.

пекà	'to bake'	,	пекàр	'baker'
брьсна	'to shave'	:	брьснàр	'barber'
млàко	'milk'	:	млекàр	'milkman'
рòба	'fish'	:	рибàр	'fisherman'

3) The suffix **-тел** is added to verbal bases (usually to the Aorist verb stem) to form Agent nouns. The stress is usually on the syllable before the suffix **-тел**.

ùча	'to study'	:	ùчих	'I studied'
пиша	'to write'	:	писх	'I wrote'
говòря	'to speak'	:	говòрих	'I spoke'
спасàй	'to save'	:	спасàх	'I saved'
				'rescuer life-guard'
				'teacher', писàтель 'writer', слушàтель 'listener', любàтель 'amateur', читàтель 'reader'.

4) The suffix **-ник** is added to adjectives, past passive participle and noun bases to form Agent nouns and nouns denoting objects and places:

прàтен	'sent'	:	прàтеник	'messenger'
зàвист	'envy'	:	зàвистник	'envious man'
рàбота	'word'	:	рабòтник	'worker/labourer'
пèпел	'ashes'	:	пепелник	'ash-tray'

хлàд	'coolness'	:	хладѝлник	'refrigerator'
мръсен	'dirty'	:	мръсник	'mean person, scoundrel'

Examples in Russian: спутник 'satellite', защитник 'defender', ученик 'schoolboy', помощник 'someone who helps', художник 'artist, painter'.

5) The suffix **-ец** is added to verbal, nominal and adjectival bases to form Agent nouns. It is extremely productive. There is also **-аңец** and **-яңец**.

летя	'to fly'	:	летèц	'pilot'
ловя	'to hunt'	:	ловèц	'hunter'
мъдър	'wise'	:	мъдрèц	'wise man'
страхлив	'cowardly'	:	страхливèц	'coward'
София	'Sofia'	:	софийнец	'citizen of Sofia'
Еврòпа	'Europe'	:	европеец	'European'
Япония	'Japan'	:	японец	'Japanese'
Амèрика	'America'	:	америкàнец	'American'

In Russian this suffix is productive, too: украинец 'Ukrainian', иностранец 'foreigner', американец 'American', испанец 'Spaniard', японец 'Japanese'.

6) The suffix **-ин** (-аңин, -яңин, -чанин) is added to nominal bases to form personal (proper) nouns denoting place of origin.

Бългàрия	'Bulgaria'	:	българин	'Bulgarian'
Тùрция	'Turkey'	:	тùрчин	'Turk'
Англия	'England'	:	англичàнин	'Englishman'
Лондон	'London'	:	лондончàнин	'Londoner'
град	'city'	:	гражданин	'citizen'
сёло	'village'	:	сёлянин	'villager, peasant'

Some examples from Russian: гражданин 'citizen', крестьянин 'villager, peasant', англичанин 'Englishman', египтянин 'Egyptian'.

7) The suffix **-ец** is added to form diminutive masculine nouns.

вятър 'wind'	:	ветрèц	'slight wind'
дъжд 'rain'	:	дъждèц	'slight rain'
сняг 'snow'	:	снегжèц	'slight snow'

The correspondent suffixes in Russian are **-ок** and **-ик**: ветерòк 'slight wind', дождик 'slight rain'.

## 8) Suffixes of Latin origin:

### a) -ант, -ент:

стажàнт	'trainee'
лаборàнт	'laboratory assistant'
студèнт	'student'
пациèнт	'patient'
асистèнт	'assistant (professor)'

### b) -ор (-ор):

профèсor	'professor'	инспèктор	'inspector'
дирèктор	'director'	диктàтор	'dictator'
автор	'author'	композитор	'composer'

In Russian: автор 'author', директор 'director', архитèктор 'architect', композитор 'composer', консервàтор 'member of the conservative (party)'.

### c) -ик:

математик	'mathematician'
физик	'physicist'
химик	'chemist'
политик	'politician', 'statesman'

In Russian with a stress on the vowel before this suffix: матемàтик, физик, химик, политик.

### d) -ист:

журналист	'journalist'
специалист	'specialist'
радист	'radio operator'
спортсист	'sportsman'

In Russian: журналист, специалист, радист.

## Feminine Nouns

1. The most frequently used suffix which forms feminine nouns out of masculine ones is **-ка**:

готвàч	- готвàчка	'cook' (female)
млекàр	- млекàрка	'milkwoman'
студèнт	- студèнтика	'student' (female)
дирèктор	- дирèкторка	'directress'
учител	- учителка	'teacher' (female)

The correspondent suffixes in Russian are **-ница**, **-ца**:

учитель - учительница	'teacher (female)',
писатель - писательница	'writer (female)',
ученик - ученица	'schoolgirl',
художник - художница	'artist, painter (female).

The suffix **-ин** of some masculine nouns is replaced by the suffix **-ка**:

българин - българка	'Bulgarian woman'
селянин - селянка	'peasant woman'

In Russian the suffix is the same: **богарка**, **крестьянка**.

2. The suffix **-иня** is added to masculine nouns to form feminine nouns usually denoting nationality or position. This suffix is typically Bulgarian:

поляк	'Pole'	полякіня	'Polish woman'
грек	'Greek'	гъркіня	'Greek woman'
турчин	'Turk'	туркіня	'Turkish woman'
слуга	'servant'	слугіня	'servant-girl'
домакін	'host'	домакіня	'hostess', 'housewife'

3. The suffix **-ница** is added to noun and adjective bases to form nouns denoting objects and location:

соль	'salt'	солніца	'saltcellar'
годеник	'fiance'	годеница	'fiancee'
книга	'book'	книжарница	'bookshop'
болен	'ill/sick'	болница	'hospital'

4. The suffix **-алня, -илня** is added to verb bases to form nouns denoting locality:

спя	'to sleep'	спальня	'bedroom'
чета	'to read'	читальня	'reading-room'
суша	'to dry'	сушільня	'airing cupboard, drying-room'

5. The suffix **-ина** is added to adjective bases to form abstract nouns, denoting quality:

топъл	'warm'	топлинà	'warmth'
дълъг	'long'	дължинà	'length'
широк	'wide'	широкинà	'width' (as measure ment)
добър	'good'	добринà	'goodness', 'kindness'

When the same adjective bases are used and the suffix **-ота** is added there is a slight difference in meaning - adjectives with **-ота** mean quality

of the character:

доброта	'goodness of character'
широкота	'generosity of character'

6. The suffix **-ост** is added to adjective bases to form abstract nouns usually denoting quality:

горд	'proud'	гордост	'pride'
смел	'brave, courageous'	смелост	'courage'
млад	'young'	младост	'youth'
стар	'old'	старост	'old age'
хубав	'beautiful'	хубост	'beauty'

Examples of the same suffix in Russian: **гордость** 'pride', **смелость** 'courage', **юность** 'youth'.

7. The suffix **-(и)лка** is added to verbal bases to form nouns denoting objects:

закачам	'to hang up'	закачалка	'hang'(n.), 'hat and coat rack'
тегля	'to weigh'	теглілка	'scales'
остря	'to sharpen'	острілка	'pencil-sharpener'
тупам	'to beat'	тупалка	'carpet-beater'

8. The suffix **-а** is added to verbs to form nouns denoting resultative action:

моля	'to ask'	молба	'request'
дружя	'be friend with'	дружба	'friendship'
сєя	'to sow'	сейтба	'sowing'
кося	'to mow'	коситба	'hay-making', 'mowing'
вършя	'to thresh'	вършитба	'threshing'

In Russian: **свадьба**, **мольба**, **дружба**.

10. The suffix **-ница** forms nouns with emotive meaning which denote a constant and intensive repetition of the action. They are used in colloquial speech.

блъскам	'to jostle'	блъсканица	'hustle and bustle'
кàрам се	'to quarrel'	кàраница	'quarrel', 'brawl'
гоня	'to chase'	гоненица	'chase'

11. The suffixes which form diminutive feminine nouns are: **-ка**, **-ичка**, **-ица**:

книга	'book'	книжка	'booklet'
чаша	'cup'	чашка	'small cup'
сестра	'sister'	сестрічка	'little sister'

птица 'bird'	птичка	'birdie', 'little bird'
къща 'house'	къщица, къщичка	'little house'

In Russian language diminutives are very frequent. The suffixes for feminine are -ка, -ичка: голова 'head' - головка 'little head', комната 'room' - комната 'small room', сестра 'sister' - сестричка 'little sister', собака 'dog' - собачка 'small dog', птица 'bird' - птичка 'small bird'.

### Neuter Nouns

1. The suffix **-ище** is added to verbal bases to form neuter nouns denoting locality:

скривам	'to hide smth.'	скривалище	'hiding-place'
уча	'to study'	училище	'school'
летя	'to fly'	летище	'airport'
играй	'to play'	игрище	'playground'
живея	'to live'	жилище	'lodging, home'

In Russian the same suffix in words as: убежище 'shelter', жилище 'lodging, home'.

2. The suffix **-ство** is added to noun bases to form collective neuter nouns and nouns denoting locality:

студент	'student'	студентство	'students/the student body"(coll.)'
гражданин	'citizen'	гражданство	'citizenship'
детё	'child'	дётство	'childhood'
рòб	'slave'	рòбство	'slavery'
министр	'minister'	министрство	'ministry'
лек	'cure'	лекàство	'medicine'
човèк	'man'	човèчество	'mankind'
послàник	'ambassador'	посольство	'embassy'

In Russian: государство 'state', лекàство 'medicine', посольство 'embassy', человèчество 'mankind'.

The suffix **-че** which is very productive is added to masculine nouns to form diminutive neuter nouns:

другàр	'friend, comrade'	другàрче	'little friend'
брàт	'brother'	брàтче	'dear, little brother'
стòл	'chair'	стòлче	'little chair, stool'

4. The suffix **-(ен)це** is added to neuter nouns to form diminutive neuter nouns:

момчè	'boy'	момчèнце	'dear, young boy'
шишè	'bottle'	шишèнце	'vial, phial'
сèло	'village'	селè	'small village, hamlet'

### B. Compound Nouns

The patterns of compounding nouns in English and in Bulgarian are quite similar. Bulgarian compound nouns are formed by joining two word stems:

a) with a linking element

b) without a linking element (asyndetically).

1. The linking elements in compound nouns are the vowels [o], (which is more frequent) and [e].

главоболие	'headache'
дърводéлец	'carpenter'
земедéлец	'farmer', 'agrarian'
пътеводител	'guidebook'

2. A lot of words are compounded without a linking element:

полунощ	'midnight'
триъгълник	'triangle'
заместник-министр	'deputy-minister/vice-minister'
летèц-космонàйт	'aviator-cosmonaut'

Compound nouns without a linking element are a smaller group in Bulgarian in comparison to English.

Compound nouns with a linking element are written together:

добродèтел	'virtue'
животопìс	'biography', 'life'
земетресèние	'earthquake'

### II. ADJECTIVES

#### Прилагателни имена

In contrast to English, the Bulgarian adjectives have morphological markers for gender and number. Adjectives change in gender and number to conform to the rules of concord with the nouns they modify.

Semantically, both in English and in Bulgarian adjectives may be divided into:

a) qualitative adjectives; and

b) adjectives of relation.

Qualitative adjectives denote properties of the nouns which they modify. Only qualitative adjectives with some exception allow degrees of comparison.

### Gender of Adjectives Род на прилагателните имена

#### 1. Masculine

Most frequently masculine singular adjectives end in a consonant:

злàтен пръстен	'a gold ring'
голям град	'a big city'
мìрен дòговор	'a peace treaty'
щастлив край	'a happy end'
горèщ пàськ	'hot sand'
син балон	'a blue balloon'

Some masculine adjectives end in *-u* in the singular:

медицински прèглед	'a medical check-up'
български език	'(the) Bulgarian language'

In Russian masculine adjectives end in *-ый* (новый 'new'), *-ий* (rùsskij 'Russian', хороший 'nice', синий 'blue'), *-ой* (большой 'big').

#### 2. Feminine

Feminine adjectives are formed by adding the endings *-а* or *-я* to masculine ones:

голяма къща	'a large house'
щастлива случайност	'a lucky chance'
синя топка	'a blue ball'
злàтна мìна	'a gold mine'
горèща вълна	'a heat wave'

The *-u* ending of masculine adjectives is replaced by the ending *-а*:

лèкарска помош	'medical assistance'
гòрска нимфа	'a wood-nymph'
градска градина	'public garden'

In Russian feminine adjectives end in *-ая*, *-яя*: новая 'new', рùсская 'Russian', большая 'big', хорошая 'nice', синяя 'blue'.

#### 3. Neuter

Neuter adjectives are formed by adding the endings *-о*, *-ьо* or *-е* to

masculine ones:

голямо семейство	'a large family'
синьо небè	'blue sky'
овче сàрене	'sheep's milk cheese'
кràве маслò	'butter' (made of cow's milk)

The *-u* ending of masculine adjectives is replaced by the ending *-о*:

гòрско богàтство	'timber resources'
гàдско населèние	'urban population'

In Russian neuter gender adjectives end in *-ое*, *-ее*: новое 'new', рùсское 'Russian', большое 'big', хороше 'nice', синее 'blue'.

### Plural of Adjectives

#### Множествено число на прилагателните имена

1. The plural of adjectives is formed by adding the ending *-u* to the masculine singular form:

големи градовè/къщи/семейства	'big cities/houses/families'
сини балони/тòшки/небеса	'blue balloons/balls/skies'

Note: The [ja] of singular adjectives is changed into [e] in plural:

лàв завòй	:	лèви завòи	'left turns/curves'
блàл стàх	:	бèли стàхове	'blank verse'

2. Inserted [ə] or [e] in masculine adjectives is omitted in the feminine, neuter and plural forms:

добàр урòк	'a good lesson'
добрà пàмет	'a good memory'
добрò здрàве	'good health'
добрì намерèния	'good intentions'
работен дèн	'working day/hours'
работна сàла	'manpower'
работно облеклò	'workclothes'
работни дрèхи	'workclothes'

3. The *-e* of masculine adjectives ending in *-ен* preceded by a vowel is changed into *-èн* in the feminine, neuter and plural forms:

бòен вìк	'a war cry'
бòйна линия	'a fighting line'
бòйно полè	'a battle-field'
бòйни дàействия	'military operations'
ненадèен гòст	'an unexpected visitor'

ненадёйна визита	'a surprise visit'
ненадёйно щастие	'unexpected luck'
ненадёйни успехи	'unexpected success'
but: чаен 'of tea'	чàена льжичка 'teaspoon'

4. The [e] of masculine adjectives ending in *-нен* is omitted in the feminine, neuter and plural forms. They are spelt with *-нн:*

èсенен дèн	'an autumn day'
èсенна сейтба	'autumn sowing'
èсенно врёме	'autumn weather'
èсенни листа	'autumn leaves'

BUT NOTE:

вълнен плàт	'woolen cloth'
вълнена рòкля	'a woollen dress'
вълнено трикò	'wool jersey'
вълнени дрèхи	'woollen clothes'

In Russian the plural of adjectives is formed with endings *-ые*, *-ие*: новые 'new', русские 'Russian', хорошие 'nice', большие 'big', синие 'blue'.

### The Use of the Definite Article with Adjectives Членуване на прилагателните имена

Adjectives receive the definite article when they occur in noun phrases, which contain a definite noun. The definite article of the noun is transferred to the adjective. If there is more than one adjective in a noun phrase, the article is added only to the first one.

Студéнката дойдè наврёме тàзи сùтрин. 'The student came on time this morning.'

Нòвата студéнка дойдè наврёме тàзи сùтрин. 'The new student came on time this morning.'

Нàшата нòва студéнка дойдè наврёме тàзи сùтрин. 'Our new student came on time this morning.'

In Russian there is no definite article - neither with nouns nor with adjectives.

#### 1. Masculine

When an adjective modifies a masculine noun it receives either the

full or the short form of the definite article depending on the syntactic position of the noun phrase. The full form is used when a noun phrase functions as a Subject or Predicative of a sentence, and the short form is used for the rest of the syntactic functions.

full forms	short forms
-ият	-ия
[ -ят ]	[ -я ]
хùбав хùбавият	хùбавия 'the nice/beautiful'
Хùбавият клíмат ще ви се отразíй добrè на зdràвeto.	'The nice climate will be good for your health. (will do you good.)'
Бàх очарòван от хùбавия пейзàж.	'I was fascinated by the beautiful scenery.'
вèрен вèрният	верния 'correct/right/true'
Товà ли е вèрният ðтговор?	'Is that the correct answer?'
Кòй полуcи вèрния ðтговор?	'Who has got the correct answer?'
бàл бèлият	бèлия 'the white'
мàлък мàлкият	мàлкия 'the small/little'
èсенен èсенният	èсенния 'the autumn/autumnal'
гràдски гràдският	гràдския 'the urban/city' (attr.)

	Feminine	Neuter	Plural	
	+ та	+ то	+ те	
хùбав	хùбавата	хùбавото	хùбавите	'nice'
бàл	бàлата	бàлото	бèлите	'white'
мàлък	мàлката	мàлкото	мàлките	'small'
бèден	бèдната	бèдното	бèдните	'poor'
èсенен	èсенната	èсенното	èсенните	'autumnal'
гràдски	гràдската	гràдското	гràдските	'urban'

When a noun is modified by two or more adjectives the article is added only to the first adjective in the noun Phrase:

Дàлгите и трудни нòви дù-  
ми трàбва да се повтàрят  
на глàс. 'The long and difficult words  
should be repeated aloud.'

However, when the adjectives, modifying a noun denote different notions, the article is added to each of the adjectives in the Noun Phrase:  
Ще посещàвам кùрса и през 'I'll be attending the course

лётния, и през зимния се-  
местър.

both in the summer and in the  
winter semesters.'

### Degrees of Comparison

#### Степени на сравнение

Only descriptive qualitative adjectives allow degrees of comparison - (since their meaning is compatible with the idea of gradation of quality). The degrees of comparison are formed by adding the preposed particle *но-* (for the comparative degree) and *най-* (for the superlative degree) to the basic form of the adjective (with or without the article). This is similar to the analytic way of forming the degrees of comparison in English by means of *more* and *most*.

##### a) The Positive Degree

Този урок е труден. 'This lesson is difficult.'

##### b) The Comparative Degree

Този урок е по-труден от  
предишния. 'This lesson is more difficult  
than the previous one.'

##### c) The Superlative Degree

Като че ли това е най-  
трудният урок досега. 'That lesson seems to be the  
most difficult lesson so far.'

The particles *но-* and *най-* are separated from the adjective with a hyphen and are always stressed.

When the object of comparison is a noun it is introduced by the preposition *от* 'than' and when it is a Clause it is introduced by *отколкото*:

Петър е по-умен от Мария. 'Peter is more intelligent  
than Maria.'

Сега тя е по-внимателна,  
отколкото беше, преди да  
се запознае с вън. 'Now she is more careful than  
she was before she had met  
you.'

In Russian there are two ways of forming comparative and superlative degrees:

##### a) simple (unchangeable):

Этот город красивее того. 'This city is more beautiful  
than that one.'

Эта река красивее той. 'This river is more beautiful  
than that one.'

Это озеро красивее того. 'This lake is more beautiful

Эти горы красивее тех.

than that one.'  
'These mountains are more  
beautiful than those.'

##### b) compound (changeable):

###### Positive degree:

красивый город  
красивая река  
красивое озеро  
красивые горы

###### Comparative degree:

более красивый  
более красивая  
более красивое  
более красивые

###### Superlative degree:

самый красивый  
самая красивая  
самое красивое  
самые красивые

The object of comparison is introduced with no preposition and the noun is in genitive case (or with the preposition *чем* and the noun is in nominative case).

Слон больше и сильнее собаки.

'The elephant is bigger  
and stronger than the  
dog.'

Слон больше и сильнее чем  
собака.

In the superlative degree the objects of comparison are introduced with the preposition *из*:

Роза - самый красивый цветок  
из всех цветов. 'The rose is the most beautiful  
of all flowers.'

### Formation of Adjectives

#### Образуване на прилагателни имена

##### A. Suffixation

Adjectives in Bulgarian are formed mainly by derivation - that is by adding various suffixes (more rarely prefixes) to nouns, verbs and other adjectives.

##### 1. Formation of Qualitative Adjectives:

###### a) from nouns

###### suffix *-ен*:

студъл	'cold' (n.)	студен	'cold'
чудо	'wonder'	чуден	'wonderful'
воля	'will/willpower'	волен	'free, unrestrained'
ум	'mind, intelligence'	умен	'intelligent/clever'

In Russian the corresponding suffix is *-и*: зимний 'winter', лётний 'summer', народный 'national'.

**suffix -овен, -евен:**

дъжд 'rain'	дъждовен	'rainy'
гряж 'sin'	греховен	'sinful'
дух 'spirit'	духовен	'spiritual, mental'
душà 'soul'	душевен	'spiritual, mental'

The correspondent suffix in Russian is **-овн-, -евн-:** греховный, духовный, душевный.

**suffix -овит:**

вятър 'wind'	ветровит	'windy'
плод 'fruit'	плодовит	'fruitful, fertile'
дух 'spirit'	духовит	'witty'

**suffix -лив:**

сън 'sleep' (n.)	сънлив	'sleepy'
работа 'work' (n.)	работлив	'industrious'
мързел laziness'	мързелив	'lazy'
памет 'memory'	паметлив	'with a good memory'
щастие 'happiness'	щастлив	'happy'
талант 'talant'	талантлив	'talanted'

The same suffix in Russian is in adjectives as счастливый 'happy', талантливый 'talanted'.

**suffix -ест:**

сянка 'shade'	сёнчест	'shady'
зърно grain'	зърнест	'grainy'

**suffix -ист:**

трева 'grass'	тревист	'grassy'
камък 'stone'	каменист	'stony'

In Russian: зернистый 'grainy', каменистый 'stony'.

**suffix -ат:**

брàдà 'beard'	брàдàт	'bearded'
крилà 'wings'	крилàт	'winged'
зъб 'tooth'	зъбàт	'large-toothed, (fig.) sharp tongued'

In Russian: бородатый, крылатый, зубастый.

**suffix -ав, -яв**

дъх 'breath, scent'	дъхав	'fragrant'
пепел ashes'	пепеляв	'ash-coloured'
кестен 'chestnut'	кестеняв	'chestnut, auburn'

**b) from verbs****suffixes -ав, -ив, -лив, -елив, -телен:**

хлъзгам се	'to slip'	хлъзгав	'slippery'
бъбря	'to chatter'	бъбрив	'talkative'
чупя	'to break'	чуплив	'breakable, fragile'
пестя	'to economize'	пестелив	'thrifty,economical'
внимàвам	'to take care'	внимàтелен	'careful, attentive'

In Russian: бережливый 'thrifty, economical', внимательный 'attentive', замечательный 'outstanding', отрицательный 'negative'.

**c) from other adjectives****suffix -аs:**

болен	'sick, ill'	болнаs	'sicky, frail'
дребен	'small, tiny'	дребнаs	'petty, mean'

**suffix -оват:**

слàб	'weak, thin, slight'	слабоват	'weakly, poor' (fig.)
глùпав	'stupid'	глуповат	'silly, sheepish, doltish'

**2. Formation of Relational Adjectives****a) from nouns**

**suffix -ов, (-ев).** The suffix is extremely productive and is added to proper and common nouns to form possessive and other kinds of relational adjectives, as well as family names.

брàт	'brother'	брàтov	'brother's'
чѝчо	'uncle'	чѝчов	'uncle's'
слѝнце	'sun'	слѝнчев	'sunny'
шоколàд	'chocolate'	шоколàдов	'chocolate' (attr.)
малина	'raspberry'	малинов	'raspberry' (attr.)
Пётръ	'Peter'	Петрòв	'Petrov' (lit. of Peter)

This suffix is very productive and is used to form Bulgarian surnames - Иванов, Димитров, Николаев (masculine), Иванова, Димитрова, Николаева (feminine).

In Russian: сосновый 'of pine', меховой 'of leather', Смирнов 'family name Smirnov'.

**suffix -ски.** The suffix is very productive and is added to common and proper nouns.

град	'city'	градски	'urban, city' (attr.)
детè	'child'	дèтски	'children's'
женà	'woman'	жèнски	'woman's, female'
София	'Sofia'	софийски	'of Sofia'
Лондон	'London'	лондонски	'London(attr) of London'
Африка	'Africa'	африкански	'African'

In Russian: жèнский 'woman's, female', русский 'Russian', москòвский 'of Moscow'.

suffix **-ески**. In the process of derivation with this suffix some changes take place:

[g] is changed into [ž]:

врàг	'enemy'	врàжески	'enemy'(attr.), 'hostile'
In Russian: врàжеский			

[k] is changed into [č]:

ученик	'pupil, schoolboy'	ученически	'pupil's'
In Russian: технический 'technical'			

[x] is changed into [š]:

монах	'monk'	монашески	'monastic'
In Russian: монашеский.			

suffix **-ешки**:

бàба	'old woman, grandmother'	бàбешки	'old woman's'
пìле	'chicken'	пìлеши	'chicken' (attr.)

The suffixes **-ен** and **-ов** are added to common nouns.

suffix **-ен:**

нарòд	'people'	нарòден	'people's'
държàва	'state'	държàвен	'state' (attr.)
чай	'tea'	чàен	'tea' (attr.)
желязо	'iron'	желèзен	'iron' (attr.)
злàто	'gold'	злàтен	'golden, gold' (attr.)

suffix **-ов:**

грùпа	'group'	грùпов	'group' (attr.)
смìсъл	'meaning'	смìслов	'meaningful'
бòр	'pine-tree'	бòров	'pine' (attr.)

In Russian: групповòй, смысловòй, сосновый.

b) from verbs

suffix **-ителен**, **-ателен**:

да разхладя	'to cool'	разхладителен	'cooling'
-------------	-----------	---------------	-----------

да измèря	'to measure'	измерителен	'measuring'
да накàжа	'to punish'	наказателен	'punitive'
накàзах	'I punished'		
състезàвам се	'to compete'	състезателен	'competitive'
	suffix <b>-илен</b> , <b>-ален:</b>		
да родя	'to give birth to'	родилен	'maternity' (attr.)
игràя	'to play'	игрален	'playing'
спà	'to sleep'	спàлен	'sleeping'

In Russian: освежительный 'refreshing', сострадательный 'sympathetic', родительный 'maternity, genitive (case)'.

c) from adverbs of place and time

suffix **-шен:**

ùтре	'tomorrow'	ùтрешиен	'tomorrow's'
днèс	'today'	днèшиен	'today's'
сегà	'now'	сегàшиен	'present-day, current'
тùк(a)	'here'	тùкашиен	'local, of this place'

In Russian: зàвтрашний 'tomorrow's', сегòдняшний 'today's', нынешний 'present-day, current', сдèшний 'local, of this place'.

There are quite a number of adjectives of foreign origin:

актуàлен	'topical, current'
дисциплиниàрен	'disciplinary'
обектиàвен	'objective'
революциònен	'revolutionary'
национàлен	'national'
гениàлен	'of genius'

In Russian: гениàльный, национàльный.

suffixes **-ичен** and **-ическа**. These suffixes are also used to derive adjectives from nouns of foreign origin. The suffix **-ичен** usually derives qualitative adjectives and the suffix **-ическа** - relational adjectives. The two adjectives derived from the same noun can most frequently be used as synonyms but sometimes they are not interchangeable.

алгебричен/алгебрически	'algebraic'
астрономичен/астрономически	'astronomic(al)'

but:

лирично настроение	'lyrical mood'
лирическо стихотворение	'lyric poem'
икономичен живòт	'frugal life'

In Russian: экономѝчный 'frugal', икономѝческий 'of economics', археологѝческий 'archaeological', биологѝческий 'biological', геологѝческий 'geological', демократѝческий 'democratic', исторѝческий 'historical', математѝческий 'mathematical', технѝческий 'technical', физѝческий 'physical'.

### B. Compound Adjectives

a) with the linking vowels [o] or [e]:

русокòс	'fair-haired, blond'
далекогlèd	'far-sighted'
светлосин	'light blue'
земедèлски	'agricultural'
коневьден	'horse-breeding'

In Russian:

общеизвèстный 'famous', сельскохозяйственный 'agricultural'.

b) without a linking vowel. These compounds are usually (but not always) spelt with a hyphen:

българо-англѝйски речник 'a Bulgarian-English dictionary'  
исторѝко-филологѝчески факултèт 'faculty of history and philology'

народовластен 'of people's power'

In Russian:

рùсско-англѝйский словарь 'Russian-English dictionary'  
аnglo-рùсский словарь 'English-Russian dictionary'

### III. NUMERALS

#### Числителни имена

Numerals fall into two groups: cardinal numerals and ordinal numerals.

#### A. Cardinal Numerals

##### Бройни числителни

The cardinal numerals in Bulgarian represent a decimal system. The numeral един 'one' is an adjective and has a masculine, a feminine and a neuter form:

masculine	feminine
един стòл 'one chair'	еднà маса 'one table'
	нейтер

единò леглò 'one bed'

The numeral два/две 'two' has two forms: one for masculine and another one for feminine and neuter.

masculine двà стòла 'two chairs'

feminine and neuter

двè màси 'two tables'      двè лèглà 'two beds'

The other numerals are not inflected for gender and number. Some cardinal numbers (from 2 to 6) have special forms, with which they combine with personal masculine nouns.

1	един стòл/мъж	'one chair/man'
	еднà книга/девòйка	'one book/girl'
	единò леглò/детè	'one bed/child'
2	двà стòла/двàма мъжè	'two chairs/two men'
	двè книги/девòйки/	'two books/girls/
	леглà/деца	'beds/children'
3	три стòла/книги/	'three chairs/books/
	девòйки/леглà/деца	'girls/beds/children'
	трìма мъжè/дùши	'three men'
4	чëтири стòла/книги/	'four chairs/books/
	девòйки/леглà/деца	'girls/beds/children'
	четириìма мъжè/дùши	'four men'
5	пет стòла/книги/	'five chairs/books/
	девòйки/леглà/деца	'girls/beds/children'
	петìма мъжè	'five men'

6 шест стòла/книги/  
девойки/леглà/децà  
шестъма мъжè

'six chairs/books/  
girls/beds/children'  
'six men'

From number 7 on the numerals have the same form for all the genders (people and things).

7 сèдем мъжè/стòла/книги/девойки/леглà/децà  
'seven men/chairs/books/girls/beds/children'

When we count without adding nouns, we say the neuter gender forms of the numerals 1 and 2. But in Russian the masculine forms are used.

Bulgarian	Russian
1 еднò	один
2 двè	два
3 трì	три
4 чèтири	четыре
5 пèт	пять
6 шèст	шесть
7 сèдем	семь
8 òсем	восьмь
9 дèвят	девять
10 дèсеть	десять
11 единàдесет /единàйсет	одиннадцать
12 дванàдесет /дванàйсет	двенадцать
13 тринàдесет /тринàйсет	тринадцать
14 четыринàдесет /четыринàйсет	четырнадцать
15 петнàдесет /петнàйсет	пятнадцать
16 шестнàдесет /шестнàйсет	шестнадцать
17 седемнàдесет /седемнàйсет	семнадцать
18 осемнàдесет /осемнàйсет	восемнадцать
19 деветнàдесет /деветнàйсет	девятнадцать
20 двàдесет /двàйсет	двадцать
21 двàдесет и еднò	двадцать один
22 двàдесет и двè	двадцать два
23 двàдесет и трì	двадцать три
.	.
29 двàдесет и дèвят	двадцать девять

30	тридесет /трийсет	тридцать
31	тридесет и еднò	тридцать один
.	.	.
39	тридесет и дèвят	тридцать девять
40	четиридесет /четирийсет	сорок
50	петдесет	пятьдесят
60	шестдесет	шестьдесят
70	седемдесет	семьдесят
80	осемдесет	восемьдесят
90	деветдесет	девяносто
100	стò	сто
105	стò и пèт	сто пять
157	стò петдесет и сèдем	сто пятьдесят семь
200	двèста	двести
300	триста	триста
400	четыристотин	четыреста
500	пèтстотин	пятьсот
600	шèстстотин	шестьсот
700	сèдемстотин	семьсот
800	òсемстотин	восемьсот
900	дèвятстотин	девятьсот
1000	хилàда	тысяча
1288	хилàда двèста осемдесет и òсем	тысяча двести восемь- десят восемь
2000	двè хилàди	две тысячи
.	.	.
1 000 000	един милион	миллион
2 000 000	двà милиона	два миллиона
1 000 000 000	един миллиард	миллиард
2 000 000 000	двà миллиарда	два миллиарда

The cardinal numerals хилàда 'thousand', милион 'million' and миллиард 'milliard' behave as nouns. They have plural forms.

хилàда	двè (трì, пèт, òсем) хилàди
'one thousand'	'two (three, five, eight) thousand'
милион	дèсеть милиона
'one million'	'ten million'

милиàрд

'one milliard'

двà милиàрда

'two milliard'

мнòго милиàрди

'many milliards'

The rest of the cardinal numerals are complex: they are combinations of two or more simple and compound numerals. The conjunction *и* is placed before the last component (while in Russian numerals there is no conjunction). E.g. (Bulg.):

24    двàдесет (двàйсет) и чèтири

57    петдесèт и сèдем

186    стò осемдесèт и шèст

215    двèста и петнàдесет (петнàйсет)

1544    хиляда пèтстотин четиридесèт и чèтири

With long numbers in each group of three there should be one *и*:

238 525 301 499    двèста тридесèт и осем милиàрда,  
пèтстотин двàдесет и пèт милиона,  
трьста и еднà хиляди,  
чèтиристотин деветдесèт и дèвят

### Cardinal Numerals and the Definite Article

Cardinal numerals are frequently used with the definite article. The article is added according to the rules for adjectives. With Russian numerals there is no definite article.

**Masculine Singular**

един - еднàят

**Feminine Singular**

еднà - еднàта

**Plural**

еднà - еднàтme

'the ones'

The form of the definite article for numerals ending in *-a* is *-ma*.  
два: двàта стола до прозòреца    'the two chairs by the window'  
двàма: двамàта писàтели от САЩ    'the two writers from the USA'  
трьма: тримата бràти    'the three brothers'  
трьста: трьстата лева, които    'the three hundred levs'  
ми дàлжиши    'you owe me'

The form of the definite article for numerals ending in a consonant, *-e* or *-u* is *-me*:

две: двèте приятелки	'the two girlfriends'
трь: трьте почìвни дñи	'the three days off'
пèт: петтè ѹзпита	'the five exams'

стò: стòтè стрàници

The stress is on the article *-me* when it is added to numerals:

дèсет: десеттè държàви

пèтстотин: петстотинтè лèва

**Exceptions:** (the stress does not change)

двè: двèтè стаи

трь: трьте сгради

The numerals 'million' and 'milliard' are treated as masculine nouns and get the forms *-m*, *-a* in the singular and the form *-me* in the plural:

милион:    милионт/милиònа

                  милионите

милиàрд:    милиàрдт/милиàрда

                  милиàрдите

The numeral хиляда 'thousand' is a feminine noun, so the definite article for singular will be *-ma*, and for plural - *-me*:

хиляда:    хилядата

хилядите (with changed stress)    'the thousands'

**Note:** Masculine nouns (meaning things) have special form when used after all cardinal numerals except един 'one':

два мòлива    'two pencils'

пèт стòла    'five chairs'

дèсет прозòреца    'ten windows'

This form coincides with the Russian genitive case of singular masculine nouns after numerals 2, 3, 4 - два карандашà, три столà, четыре студèнта, and from 5 on the nouns are genitive case plural - пàть карандашàй.

In Bulgarian masculine nouns denoting people, all feminine and neuter gender nouns (denoting people and things) are used with their plural forms when they occur after cardinal numerals:

дèсет студèнти    'ten students' (masculine, plural)

пèт студèнтки    'five students' (feminine, plural)

двè стаи    'two rooms' (feminine, plural)

трь деца    'three children' (neuter, plural)

единайсет леглà    'eleven beds' (neuter, plural)

**Ordinal Numerals**  
**Редни числителни**

The ordinal numerals are adjectives. They have varying forms for masculine, feminine, neuter and plural.

Ordinal numerals are formed from cardinal numerals by adding the suffix *-u* (for masculine singular and for the plural form), the suffix *-a* for the feminine and *-o* for the neuter forms. The numerals *първи*, *втори*, *трети* and *четвърти* (1st, 2nd, 3rd and 4th) differ from the respective cardinal numerals (they are suppletive).

Masc.sing.	Fem.sing.	Neut.sing.	Plural	
първи (пръв)	първа	първо	първи	1st
втори	втора	второ	втори	2nd
трети	трета	трето	трети	3rd
четвърти	четвърта	четвърто	четвърти	4th
пети	пета	пето	пети	5th
шести	шеста	шесто	шести	6th
седми	седма	седмо	седми	7th
осми	осма	осмо	осми	8th
девети	девета	девето	девети	9th
десети	десета	десето	десети	10th
двадесети (двайсети)	двадесета	двадесето	двадесети	20th
тридесети (трийсети)	тридесета	тридесето	тридесети	30th
четиридесети (четирийсети)	четиридесета	четиридесето	четиридесети	40th
деветдесети	деветдесета	деветдесето	деветдесети	90th
стотен	стотна	стотно	стотни	100th
шестстотен	шестстотна	шестстотно	шестстотни	600th
хиладен	хиладна	хиладно	хиладни	1000th
милионен	милионна	милионно	милионни	millionth
милиарден	милиардна	милиардно	милиардни	milliardth

(The forms in brackets are spoken variants).

Compound ordinals are formed from corresponding compound cardinals in which only the final component is ordinal:

44	четиридесет и четири:	четиридесет и четвърти	44th
55	петдесет и пет:	петдесет и пети	55th
1998 - хилада деветстотин деветдесет и осма година 'the year 1998th'			
2001 - две хилади и първа година			

In contrast to English, the years are expressed with ordinal numerals (feminine) in Bulgarian. There is certain similarity in expressing dates but the ordinals do not take the definite article in Bulgarian: *десети септември*, *хилада деветдесет и девета година* 'September 10th 1999' *трети март*, *хилада осемстотин седемдесет и осма година* 'March 3rd 1878'

Centuries are expressed similarly, but again in Bulgarian the ordinal numeral does not usually take the definite article and is of masculine gender.

девети век	'9th century'
двадесети (двайсети) век	'20th century'
двадесет (двайсет) и първи век	'21st century'

There is some difference in the way pages, chapters, parts of books, etc. are designated:

стоти първа страница	'page 101'
седма глава	'chapter 7'
първа част	'part one'
Първата световна война	'World War I'
цар Борис Втори	"Tsar Boris II"

Russian ordinal numbers are quite similar to the Bulgarian ones.

Masc.sing.	Fem.sing.	Neut.sing.	Plural	
первый	первая	первое	первые	1st
второй	вторая	второе	вторые	2nd
третий	третья	третье	третьи	3rd
четвёртый	четвёртая	четвёртое	четвёртые	4th
пятый	пятая	пятое	пятые	5th
шестой	шестая	шестое	шестые	6th

The dates in Russian are formed as follows:

Сегодня двадцать первое июля тысяча девятьсот девяносто восьмого года - 'Today is 21st of July 1998'.

## Fractions

### Дроби

The formation of fractional numbers in Bulgarian is similar to English. The numerator is a cardinal numeral and the denominator is an ordinal one.

една пета	'1/5'
две трети	'2/3'
три четвърти	'3/4'
седем двадесети (двайсети)	'7/20'
една стотна	'1/100'
един процент	or едно на сто '1%'
петдесет процента or петдесет на сто	'50%'
една втора, половин, половинка	'1/2, half'

The numeral *половин* 'half' is used only before nouns:

половин килограм ябълки	'half a kilo of apples'
-------------------------	-------------------------

On the other hand, *половина* 'a half' is used after nouns or other numerals:

месец и половина	'a month and a half'
Часът е седем и половина.	'It's half past seven.'
една трета, третина	'1/3'
една четвърт, четвъртина, четвърт	'1/4'

The numeral *четвърт* 'quarter' is used before a noun and/or after a noun and another numeral.

четвърт сирене	'a quarter (of a kilo) of cheese'
килограм и четвърт	'a kilo and a quarter'
Часът е десет и четвърт. 'It's quarter past nine.'	

In Russian fractions are formed quite similarly:

одна пятая (часть)	1/5
две пятых (части)	2/5
три пятых	3/5
половина	1/2
треть	1/3
четверть	1/4

## Decimal Numbers

### Десетични дроби

In Bulgarian: (*цяло* means 'whole number' as opposed to 'fraction')

нъла цяло и пет (десети)	0.5
едно цяло и три стотни	1.03
две цяло и двадесет и пет (стотни)	2.25
две цяло и десет (стотни)	2.10
три цяло и шестдесет (шайсет) и пет (стотни)	3.65

In Russian:

ноль целых, пятьдесятых	0.5
одна целая, три сотых	1.03
две целых, двадцать пять сотых	2.25

## Ordinal Numerals and the Definite Article

The forms of the definite article are added to ordinal numerals according to the rules for adjectives.

Masc.sing.	Fem.sing.	Neut.sing.	Plural
-ят[я], -	ият[ия]	-та	-то
първият	първата	първото	първите
(първия) 'the 1st'			
вторият	втората	второто	вторите
(втория) 'the 2nd'			
четвъртият	четвъртата	четвъртото	четвъртите
(четвъртия) 'the 4th'			
седмият	седмата	седмото	седмите
(седмия) 'the 7th'			
стотният	стотната	стотното	стотните
(стотния) 'the 100th'			
хиляденят	хилядената	хиляденото	хилядените
(хилядения) 'the 1000th'			

The definite article is added only to the last component of complex ordinal numerals:

шестстотин петдесет и седмият (седмия) 'the 657th'

In Russian language there is no definite article.

### Formation of Nouns from Cardinal Numerals

The suffixes *-ица*, *-(op)ка*, *-ойка* derive nouns from cardinal numerals:

един : единица	'one'(n.) 'unit'
двє : двойка	'a two, a couple'
три : тройка	'a three'
четири : четвірка	'a four'
п'ят : п'ятірка, п'ятіца	'a five'
шість : шестірка, шестіца	'a six'
сім : сімірка, сіміца	'a seven'
вісім : осмірка, осміца	'a eight'
дев'ят : дев'ятірка, дев'ятка, дев'ятка	'a nine'
дес'ят : десетірка, десятка, десетка	'a ten'
единадесет : единадесетірка (единайсетірка)	'an eleven'
двадесет : двадесетірка (двайсетірка), двадесетіца (двайсетіца)	'a twenty'
сто : стотица	'a hundred'

Most often these nouns are used for numbers of trams, buses and trolleybuses in public transport:

За гарада трябва да вземе- 'To the station you have to  
те единицата или седміцата. take tram number 1 or 7.'

In colloquial speech they are used to denote marks:

Днес пол'зих шестіца по 'Today I got an excellent (6)  
англійски. mark in English.'

In Russian they are used similarly:

Опять двойка. 'Again a poor (2) mark.'

### Formation of Adjectives from Cardinal Numerals

a) The suffixes *-оен(-ойн-)*, *-open(-орн-)* derive adjectives which denote the number of parts an object consists of.

двоен, двойна, двойно, двойни	'double, two fold'
двойно легло	'a double-size bed'
тройен, тройна, тройно, тройни	'triple, threefold'
тройно правило	'the rule of three'

двайсеторен, двайсеторна, двайсеторно, двайсеторни 'twenty-fold'

In Russian:

двойнёй, двойная, двойнёе, двойнёе

тройнёй, тройная, тройнёе, тройнёе

b) The suffix *-кратен(-кратн-)* derives adjectives denoting the number of repetitions.

единократен, единократна, единократно, единократни	'single'
единократно възнаграждение	'one time, single payment'
двуократен, двуократна, двуократно, двуократни	'double, twofold'
двуократен шампіон	'twice champion'
петократен, петократна, петократно, петократни	'five-fold'
Ако загубите книга, трябва	'If you lose a book you will
да я платите в петократен	have to pay five times the
размер.	price.'
стократен, стократна, стократно, стократни	'hundred-fold'

c) Cardinal numerals are used as a first component in compound adjectives:

двустраниен	'bilateral'
двугодишен/двегодишен	'two-year'(attr.)
трисріччен	'three-syllable'(attr.)
четириримесчен	'four-month'(attr.)

d) Ordinal numerals are also used as components of compound adjectives:

първостепенен	'first-rate'(attr.)
първокласен	'first-class'(attr.)
второкласен	'second-class'(attr.)

## IV. PRONOUNS

### Местоимения

Pronouns indicate living beings, things and their qualities without naming or describing them. Being substitutes of other parts of speech, they are used very frequently and form a considerable part of any text or conversation.

From a semantic point of view the pronouns are subdivided into nine subclasses:

1. Personal pronouns: аз, ти, той, тя, то, ние, вие, те - 'I, you (sg.), he, she, it, we, you, they';
2. Possessive pronouns: мой 'my', твой 'your', негов, негова, негово, негови 'his', негин 'her', наш 'our', ваш 'your', тежен 'their'...
3. Reflexive pronouns: сеbe си, се, си 'oneself', свой, своя, свое, своди 'my own, your own, his own, her own, its own, our own, your own, their own';
4. Demonstrative pronouns: този, тоя, тази, това 'this', тези 'these', онзи, онази, онова 'that', онези 'those';
5. Interrogative pronouns: кой, коя, коè, кой 'who, which one' какъв 'what', чий 'whose'...
6. Relative pronouns: който, която, коèто, който, какъвто, чийто... 'who, that, whose';
7. Indefinite pronouns: някой, някакъв, нечий... 'somebody, some, somebody's';
8. Negative pronouns: някой, някакъв, ничий... - 'nobody, no, nobody's';
9. Generalizing pronouns: всеки, всякой, всякакъв... - 'anybody, anyone, any'

#### 1. Personal Pronouns

##### Лични местоимения

Personal pronouns indicate persons or objects from the point of view of their relation to the speaker. They have different forms for the singular and the plural and in the third person singular - for the masculine, feminine and neuter gender. They also have different forms for the Nominative, Accusative and Dative cases.

Nominative Subject	Accusative		Dative		
	Full form	Direct Object Short form	Full form	Indirect Object Short form	
<b>Singular:</b>					
аз 'I'	мène	ме	на мène	ми 'me'	
ти 'you'	тèбе	те	на тèбе	ти 'you'	
той 'he'	нèго	го	на нèго	мy 'him'	
тя 'she'	нèя	я	на нèя	ѝ 'her'	
то 'it'	нèго	го	на нèго	мy 'it'	
<b>Plural:</b>					
ние 'we'	нас	ни	на нас	ни 'us'	
вие 'you'	вас	ви	на вас	ви 'you'	
те 'they'	тях	ги	на тях	им 'them'	
<b>In Russian:</b>					
Nominative case	Genitive case	Dative case	Accusa- tive case	Instumen- tal	Prep. case
я 'I'	меня	мне	меня	мной	мне
ты 'you'	тебя	тебè	тебя	тобой	тебè
он 'he'	негò	емù	его	им	нём
она 'she'	ней	ей	её	ей	ней
оно 'it'	него	ему	его	им	нём
мы 'we'	нас	нам	нас	нас	нас
вы 'you'	вас	вам	вас	вас	вас
они 'they'	них	им	их	их	них

#### Use of the Personal Pronouns

a) The Nominative forms of the personal pronouns are used when they function as Subjects or Attributives. E.g.:

Те полùчиха извèстието вчёра. "They got the message yesterday."

Unlike English, personal pronouns in subject position are often omitted in Bulgarian, especially when the Subject does not carry the logical stress. The endings of the verb indicate the person, number and gender of the omitted subject.

Заèт съм. 'I am busy.' (male)

Заèта съм. 'I am busy.' (female)

Заèти сме. 'We are busy.'

b) The short forms of the personal pronouns are used more often

than the full (or emphatic) forms. The accusative forms of the personal pronouns function as direct objects. E.g.:

Аз *ги* потърсих, но тè 'I looked for them, but they were not at home.'

Ивàн *ме* поздравѝ. 'Ivan greeted me.'

Почàкай *я*. 'Wait for her.'

The short dative forms of the personal pronouns function as indirect objects. E.g.:

Ще *ти* обясня всùчко. 'I'll explain everything to you.'

Тя *им* е обещаля. 'She has promised them.'

The short forms of the personal pronouns are never used at the beginning of a sentence or after a preposition. When a sentence begins with a verb, the pronoun stands immediately after the verb.

Болѝ *го* главата. 'He has a headache.'

Нòся *ти* писмò. 'I've brought you a letter.'

When a sentence begins with some other word, the pronoun stands before the verb:

Каквò *ти* е? 'What's the matter with you?'

In the future tense the short forms of the pronouns stand after the particle *ще* от *нàма да*:

Ще *ги* покàним. 'We'll invite them.'

Нàма да *го* покàним. 'We won't invite him.'

When used with double object verbs the short Dative forms of the pronouns are placed before the Accusative ones:

- Покàза ли снùмките родители си? 'Did you show the photographs to your parents?'

- Да, покàзах *им* *ги*. 'Yes, I did. (I showed them to them.)'

The short forms of the personal pronouns are never stressed except when preceded by the negative particle *не*:

Дàдох *го*. 'I've given it.'

Не *го* дàдох. 'I've not given it.'

Чàкай *ги*. 'Wait for them.'

Не *ги* чàкай. 'Don't wait for them.'

c) The full (or emphatic) Accusative forms are used when the logical stress falls on the Object, expressed by a personal pronoun:

- Тèбе ли поглèдна или 'Did he look at you or at her?'

нèя?

- *Мèне* поглèдна, а не *нèя*. 'He looked at me, not at her.'

The full Dative forms of the personal pronouns are frequently used after prepositions:

- Каквò да ви поръчам?

- *На мèне* поръчай чай, а *на тях* - кафè.

#### Accusative forms:

*Мèне* *ме* болѝ зъб.

*Нèго* *го* нàма.

*Тèбе* *те* е яд.

*Нèя* *я* е страх.

#### Dative forms:

*На мèне* *ми* се пие кафè.

*На тèбе* *ти* се спи.

*На нас* *ни* е мнòго приятно.

*На тях* *им* е горèшо.

The object (direct and indirect) is also expressed by a noun and the short form of a personal pronoun used together (the so called double object in Bulgarian):

*Студеñтите* *ги* нàма днес. 'The students are not here Today.'

Каквò *му* е *на детèто*? 'What's the matter with the child?'

## 2. Possessive Pronouns

### Притежателни местоимения

Possessive pronouns in Bulgarian correspond to Personal Pronouns and behave as Adjectives.

They have full and short forms.

Possession in Bulgarian is also expressed by a combination of the preposition *на* + a noun or by an adjective formed from a noun with the suffixes *-ов* or *-ин*:

Книгата *на* Ивàн.

Ивàновата книга. 'Ivan's book.'

Нèговата книга/Книгата *му*. 'His book.'

Стàята *на* Жàвка.

Жѝвкината стàя.

'Zhivka's room.'

Нéйната стàя/Стàята ѹ.

'Her room.'

The questions for possession are:

На когò е тàзи книга? 'Whose is this book?' (unchangeable)  
 Чий е този вèстник? 'Whose is this newspaper?' (masc.)  
 Чия е тàзи книга? 'Whose is this book?' (fem.)  
 Чие е товà писмò? 'Whose is this letter?' (neut.)  
 Чии са тèзи дрèхи? 'Whose are these clothes?' (pl.)

Person	Full forms	Short
One possessor - one thing possessed masc. fem. neut.	One possessor - many things possessed plural	forms sing. and plural
аз	мой мòя мòе	мòи
	'my, mine'	'my'
ти	твой твòя твòе	твòи
	'your, yours'	'your'
той	нèгов нèгова нèгово	нèгови
	'his' 'his'	'his'
тя	нèин нèйна нèйно	нèйни
	'her, hers'	'her'
то	нèгов нèгова нèгово	нèгови
	'its'	'its'
Many possessors - one thing possessed	Many possessors - more than one thing possessed	
ниe	наш наша наше	наши
	'our, ours' 'our, ours'	'our'
вие	ваш вàша вàше	вàши
	'your, yours' 'your, yours'	'your'
те	тèхен тàхна тàхно	тèхни
	'their, theirs' 'their, theirs'	'their'

The Russian possessive pronouns are quite similar to the Bulgarian ones:

	Masc. Fem.	Neut. Pl.	English
Questions:	чей чья	чье чьи	'whose'
Pronouns:	мой мой	моё мой	'my'
	твой твòя	твоё твòй	'your'
	егò егò	егò егò	'his'
	её её	её её	'her'
	наш наша	наше наши	'our'
	ваш вàша	вàше вàши	'your'
	их их	их их	'their'

As can be seen from the tables the main difference is that all Bulgarian possessive pronouns change in gender and number while in Russian the third person singular and plural possessive pronouns are unchangeable.

In Russian the possessive pronouns are positioned before the noun as adjectives and there is no short form as there is in Bulgarian, used after the noun possessed.

In Russian there is no definite article.

The rules for the use of the definite article with the Bulgarian full possessive forms of the pronouns are the same as for adjectives. If a noun phrase is the subject of a sentence, the possessive pronoun defining the noun in it takes the full form of the definite article (masculine form only). If a masculine noun defined by a possessive pronoun is in Object position, the short form of the article is added to the possessive pronoun.

Masculine	Object Position	English
мой	мòят брат	мòя брат
твой	твòят брат	твòя брат
нèгов	негòвият брат	негòвия брат
нèин	нейният брат	нейния брат
наш	нашият брат	нашия брат
ваш	вàшият брат	вàшия брат
тèхен	тèхният брат	тèхния брат

The definite article for feminine is *-ma*, for neuter gender - *-mo*, and for plural - *-me*, in both positions - Subject and Object.

Feminine	With article	English
мòя	<i>мòята</i> сестrà	'my sister'
твòя	<i>твòята</i> сестrà	'your sister'
нèгов	<i>нèговата</i> сестrà	'his sister'
нèйна	<i>нèйната</i> сестrà	'her sister'
нàшà	<i>нàшата</i> сестrà	'our sister'
вàша	<i>вàшата</i> сестrà	'your sister'
тàхна	<i>тàхната</i> сестrà	'their sister'
Neuter	With article	English
мòе	<i>мòето</i> детè	'my child'
твòе	<i>твòето</i> детè	'your child'
нèгово	<i>нèговото</i> детè	'his child'
нèйно	<i>нèйното</i> детè	'her child'
нàше	<i>нàшето</i> детè	'our child'
вàше	<i>вàшето</i> детè	'your child'
тàхно	<i>тàхното</i> детè	'their child'
Plural	With article	English
мòи	<i>мòите</i> бràтя, сестрì, децà	
твòи	<i>твòите</i> бràтя, сестрì, децà	
нèгови	<i>нèговите</i> бràтя, сестрì, децà	
нèйни	<i>нèйните</i> бràтя, сестрì, децà	
нàши	<i>нàшите</i> бràтя, сестрì, децà	
вàши	<i>вàшите</i> бràтя, сестрì, децà	
тèхни	<i>тèхните</i> бràтя, сестрì, децà	

In contrast to Bulgarian, in English no definite article is added to possessive adjectives or pronouns because they contain this idea in their meaning (my, your, his, mine, yours are determiners).

**Examples:**

**a) masculine**

<i>Синът</i> на Иванòв е студèнт.	'Ivanov's son is a student.'
<i>Нèговият</i> син е студèнт в първи курс.	'His son is a first-year student.'
Успèхът на <i>нèговия</i> син е отлиèчен.	'His son has excellent grades.'

**b) feminine**

Дъщерята на Ева е мàлка.	'Eva's daughter is young.'
<i>Нèйната</i> дъщеря е мàлка.	'Her daughter is young.'

**c) neuter**

Не знàех, че їмаш детè.	'I didn't know you had a child.'
Тòвà ли е <i>твòето</i> детè?	'Is this your child?'

**d) plural**

Всíчките играчки са на <i>вàши</i> децà.	'All the toys belong to your children.'
--	---

Usually possessive pronouns do not take the definite article after the verb *съм* 'to be':

Тòзи учèбник е <i>мой</i> .	'This textbook is mine.'
Тòвà ли е тàзи тетрàдка?	'Is this notebook yours?'

In combination of Possessive pronoun + Adjective + Noun the definite article is added to the possessive pronoun, which is first in the combination.

<i>Нàшият</i> по-мàлък син играе на двòра.	'Our younger son is playing in the yard.'
--	---

The short forms of the possessive pronouns occur after nouns, which always take the definite article:

Рàботата <i>им</i> е кàчествена.	'Their work is of high quality.'
Положèнието <i>му</i> е тèжко.	'He is quite hard up.'

Whenever a noun is preceded by more than one attribute, the short form of the possessive pronoun is placed after the first attribute, which takes the definite article:

Пàрвото <i>му</i> публикùвано сти- хотворèние бèше лирично.	'His first published poem was lyrical.'
---	---

Most nouns denoting kinship terms when combined with the short form of the possessive pronouns do not take the article:

мàйка ми	'my mother'
бàба ти	'your grandmother'
башà му	'his father'
дàдо ѹ	'her grandfather'
снахà ни	'our daughter-in-law'
дàщеря ви	'your daughter'
чѝчо им	'their uncle'

**BUT:**

внùкът ѹ	'her grandson'
мъжът ми	'my husband'
племèнникът им	'their nephew'
плèмениницата ви	'your niece'

The definite article is obligatory in the plural:

мàйките ни	'our mothers'
башките ви	'your fathers'
дàдовците им	'their grandfathers'

The short forms of the possessive pronouns are not stressed. They form an accent entity with the preceding noun.

The full forms of the possessive pronouns are preferred and occur more frequently than the short forms in the following cases:

a) when the logical stress falls on the pronoun:

Нали товà е нèговият	'This is his umbrella, isn't it?'
чадър?	

b) when used in forms of address:

Върни се, мое скъпо детè!	'Come back, my dear child!'
---------------------------	-----------------------------

### 3. Reflexive Pronouns

#### Възратни местоимения

The system of reflexive pronouns in Bulgarian does not fully correspond to English reflexive pronouns. There are two kinds of reflexive pronouns in Bulgarian: Personal and Possessive.

#### A. Personal Reflexive Pronouns

Personal reflexive pronouns usually function as Direct or Indirect objects (they never occur in Subject position).

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative
full form	-	сèбе си	на сèбе си
short form	-	ce	cu
English		'oneself'	'to oneself'

**Note:** These forms are used for all persons singular and plural. (That is, the personal reflexive pronoun does not change in gender and number):

Той говори на сèбе си. 'He talks to himself.'

Тя говори на сèбе си. 'She talks to herself.'

Ние говорим на сèбе си. 'We talk to ourselves.'

The Bulgarian personal reflexive pronouns *сèбе си* (*ce*), *на сèбе си* (*cu*) partly correspond to English reflexive personal pronouns:

Запази товà за сèбе си. 'Keep that to yourself.'

Тя трàбва да се грìжи за сèбе си. 'She must take care of herself.'

Винаги мìсля пàрво за сèбе си. 'I always think of myself first. (I always take care of my needs first.)'

The Russian reflexive pronoun is *себя* and its usage is quite similar to the Bulgarian reflexive pronouns:

Эгойст всегдà дùмает о себе. 'An egoist would think of himself.'

The short forms of the personal reflexive pronouns in Bulgarian occur more frequently than the full forms. The full forms occur:

a) after a preposition:

Нòсиш ли учèбника със сèбе си? 'Have you brought the textbook (with you)?'

b) when the logical stress falls on the pronoun:

Кòйто пùши, вредì нè сàмо на сèбе си. 'Those who smoke harm not only themselves.'

The reflexive verbs in Bulgarian are formed by means of the short forms of the reflexive personal pronouns *ce* and *cu* (*мия се*, *мия си*

ръцете, къпя се, бръсна се). Compare the Russian reflexive particle *-ся* written together with the verbs: *мътъся* 'to wash oneself', *купаться* 'to bathe, swim (oneself)', *брътъся* 'to shave oneself'.

1. Verbs that can occur as either reflexive or non-reflexive:

a)	мъя (нѣщо)	'I wash something'
	мъя се	'I wash myself'
	пазя (нѣкого)	'I guard someone'
	пазя се	'I take care of myself'
	рѣша (нѣкого)	'I comb someone'
	рѣша се	'I comb myself'
b)	говѣря (на нѣкого)	'I talk to someone'
	говѣря си	'I talk to myself'
	кѣзвам (на нѣкого)	'I say to someone'
	кѣзвам си	'I say to myself'

With some verbs the short forms *ce* and *cu* can sometimes be replaced by the full forms *сѣбе си*, *на сѣбе си*:

купувам си - купувам на сѣбе си 'I buy (sth) for myself'

2. There is a group of reflexive verbs, in which the short forms cannot be replaced by the full forms. They do not usually correspond to reflexive verbs in English. Their English counterparts are most frequently Intransitive verbs.

смѣя се	'to laugh'	трѣдя се	'to work hard, toil'
бѣя се	'to fight'	сърдя се	'to be angry'
опѣтвам се	'to try'	бѣря се	'to struggle'
врѣщам се	'to return'	усмѣхвам се	'to smile'
вѣлнѣвам се	'to be excited'	разхѣждам се	'to take a walk'
спомнѣвам си	'to remember'	мѣсля си	'to think'
лѣгам си	'to go to bed'	въобразѣвам си	'to imagine, fancy'
почивам си	'to take a rest'	отѣвам си	'to go back (home)'

In contrast to English, structures like:

спѣ ми се	'I feel like sleeping'
игрѣ ти се	'You feel like playing'
ядѣ му се	'He feels like eating', etc.

are impersonal and reflexive.

A very important point is the correct use of the short forms *ce* and *cu* with verbs which can take either one or two objects.

E.g. мъя 'to wash' бѣрша 'to wipe'

облѣчам	'to dress'	брѣсна	'to shave'
обувам	'to put on shoes'	събѣвам	'to take off'
Мъя <i>ce</i> .	'I am washing myself.'		
Мъя <i>cu</i> лицѣто.	'I am washing my face.'		
Щѣ <i>ce</i> облека бѣрзо.	'I'll dress quickly.'		
Щѣ <i>cu</i> облека нѣвия костюм.	'I'll put on my new suit.'		

As can be seen from the examples, *ce* is used when there is no object mentioned in the sentence, and *cu* is used when there is an object (and this use is partly possessive).

Note the word order of personal reflexive pronouns:

1. The pronouns *ce* and *cu* are never used at the beginning of a sentence:  
Колебаѣ се. 'I hesitate.'

It's wrong to say: \* се колебаѣ

2. If a sentence begins with a verb, the reflexive pronoun is placed after the verb:

Разхѣждам *ce* в пѣрка всѣки 'I walk in the park every day.'

3. If a sentence begins with another word the reflexive pronoun is placed before the verb:

Мъжът ми *ce* брѣсне два пѣти 'My husband shaves twice a day.'

The short reflexive pronouns should be pronounced with no stress - as an entity with the verb no matter if they are preceding it or coming after the verb.

Засмѣй *ce*! 'Cheer up! (Smile, laugh!)

Моля тѣ, измѣй *cu* рѣцѣ. 'Please, wash your hands.'

Тя го помоли да *cu* измѣи рѣцѣ. 'She asked him to wash his hands.'

But when the verb is negative the reflexive pronouns are stressed.

Не *ce* смѣй! 'Don't laugh!'

Не *ce* правѣ на глупак! 'Don't make a fool of yourself!'

Не *cu* мий рѣцѣ със сту- дѣна водѣ. 'Don't wash your hands with cold water.'

## B. The Possessive Reflexive Pronouns

Full forms		Short form		
masc.	fem.	neut	Plural	
<i>свой</i>	<i>своя</i>	<i>свде</i>	<i>свой</i>	<i>си</i>
<i>своя</i>	<i>своята</i>	<i>свдемо</i>	<i>свдите</i>	<i>си</i>

There are no corresponding reflexive possessive pronouns in English and the Bulgarian reflexive possessive pronouns are translated with possessive adjectives and pronouns (sometimes emphasized by the word 'own'):

Обичам *своята* родина. 'I love my (own) country.'

The corresponding reflexive possessive pronouns in Russian are: *свой*, *своя*, *своё*, *свой*. Their usage is very similar to the Bulgarian pronouns (used when the object belongs to the doer of the action) but in Russian they change according to the case:

Онà ждёт *своего* брата, *свою* сестрù и *своих* родителей. 'She is waiting for her brother, sister and parents.'

The reflexive possessive pronouns are never used as attributes to the Subject. They usually occur in Object Noun Phrases as attributes to the Object (and only when the Object belongs to the Subject of the sentence - if not - the possessive pronouns should be used.) Masculine pronouns never take the definite article -ят but only -я. They answer to questions beginning with the interrogative pronoun *чий*, *чия*, *чие*, *чий* 'whose':

Вие изглèжда не вѝждате *свдите* слàбости. (чий?) 'You don't seem to be aware of your (own) faults.'

The full forms of the reflexive possessive pronoun are placed before nouns. The rules for the article are the same as for the Possessive Pronouns:

Знàя *свдите* задължèния. 'I know my duties.'

The short form occurs after nouns, which take a definite article with the exception of some nouns denoting relatives:

Те ще брàнят *правата* *си*. 'They will defend (stand for) their rights.'

Обичам мàйка *си*.

'I love my mother.'

The definite article is obligatory in the plural:

Разкажà ми нèщо за *роднините* *си*. 'Tell me something about your relatives.'

The full forms of the reflexive possessive pronouns in the 1st and 2nd person singular can sometimes be substituted by the full forms of the possessive pronouns:

Ще ни разкàжете ли за *свдемо* пътуване? 'Will you tell us about your trip?'

Ще ни разкàжете ли за *свашемо* пътуване? 'Will you tell us about your trip?'

Note, however, that the short form of the reflexive possessive pronoun cannot be replaced by the short forms of the possessive pronouns:

Ще ни разкàжете ли за пътувàването *си*? 'Will you tell us about your trip?'

Note:

When the full forms of the reflexive possessive pronouns for the 3rd person singular and plural *свой*, *своя*, *свде*, *свой* along with the short form *си* are attributes to a noun and denote that it is in possession of the Subject Noun Phrase, they are not interchangeable with possessive pronouns. Substitutions of the kind will cause a change in the meaning of the sentence:

Пèтър се срèща със *своята* приятелка всèки ден. 'Peter dates his girlfriend every day.'

Пèтър се срèща с *нèговата* приятелка всèки ден.

"*нèговата* приятелка" means his, but not Peter's, somebody else's girlfriend. (With possessive pronouns the object does not belong to the subject of the sentence.)

## 4. Demonstrative Pronouns

In contrast to English, the demonstrative pronouns in Bulgarian have forms for gender.

		Singular		Plural
	masc.	fem.	neut.	
Nearby persons objects	<i>тòзи</i> ‘this’	<i>тази</i> ‘this’	<i>това</i> ‘this’	<i>тèзи</i> ‘these’
Distant persons, objects	<i>ðнзи</i> ‘that’	<i>онàзи</i> ‘that’	<i>оновà</i> ‘that’	<i>онèзи</i> ‘those’
Denoting Quality	<i>такòв</i> ‘such a’	<i>такàва</i> ‘such a’	<i>такòва</i> ‘such a’	<i>такùва</i> ‘such’
Denoting Quantity	<i>тòлко</i> ‘so much/many, that much/many’			

The corresponding Russian demonstrative pronouns are:

этот	эта	это	эти
for nearby persons and objects,			
тот	та	то	те
for distant ones.			

Denoting quality:

такòй	такàя	такòе	такùе
-------	-------	-------	-------

Denoting quantity:

стòлько			
---------	--	--	--

The Bulgarian identifying demonstrative pronouns are used to select, isolate or pick out one of a number of similar objects or persons. Some of the more frequently used demonstratives are: *тòзи*, *тази*, *това*, identifying the first (or nearest) thing that is ‘pointed’ by the speaker. The English pronouns ‘this’ and ‘that’ can both be translated with the pronouns denoting nearby persons and objects.

The pronouns denoting distant persons and objects: *ðнзи*, *онàзи*, *оновà* ‘that’ usually occur in contrast to *тòзи*, *тази*, *това* ‘this’: *Това* списание е на български език, а *оновà* - на английски.

глийски.

The demonstrative pronouns can be used independently and attributively. When used attributively, they occur before nouns and take no article. The nouns, which stand after them do not take the article, either.

Мòже и да не повàрваш на *това*, но той вèче не пàе много.

Порадì *тèзи* причини те съвèтвам да бòдеш много внимàтелна.

‘Well you may not believe it, (this) but he doesn’t drink much any more.’

‘For all these reasons my advice is to be very careful.’

## 5. Interrogative Pronouns

### Въпросителни местоимения

English and Bulgarian interrogative pronouns are similar in function but the Bulgarian pronouns distinguish gender and number.

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Persons & objects	<i>кој</i>	<i>која</i>	<i>коè</i>	<i>којù</i>
			‘who/what’	
Only for objects	<i>каквò/що</i> ‘what’			
Only for Persons	<i>когò</i> (accusative form) Preposition + <i>когò</i> ‘who/whom’			
For Quality	<i>какòв</i>	<i>каквà</i>	<i>каквò</i>	<i>каквù</i>
			‘what/what kind of’	
For Possession	<i>чий</i>	<i>чия</i>	<i>чие</i>	<i>чии</i>
For Quantity	<i>кòлко</i> ‘how many/how much’			

The pronoun **кой** is used independently (as a noun) when the question refers to the Subject of the sentence. It is used for all genders singular and plural and the verb is in the third person singular (the same rule applies to the English question 'who'):

Кой чұка на вратата? 'Who is knocking at the door?'

The pronouns **каквò/що** are used when the Subject is a non-person:

- Каквò се двіжи там? 'What's moving over there?'

- Місля, че е зæк. 'I think it's a hare.'

When the question refers to the attributive the gender and number of the interrogative pronoun are in concord with the gender and number of the Subject:

Кой е тòзи човèк? 'Who is that man?'

Кой е тàзи женà? 'Who is that woman?'

Кой са тèзи хòра? 'Who are those people?'

When used adjectivally (as attributes), the pronouns **кой**, **коя**, **кòе**, **кòи** agree with the gender and number of the noun they refer to:

Кой книга предпочташ? 'Which book do you prefer?'

Кой фильм глèдахте? 'Which film did you see?'

Кой градовè ще посетишь? 'Which towns are you going to visit?'

The masculine singular interrogative pronouns have an accusative and a dative form.

a) The accusative form **когò** is used as direct object and object of preposition:

Когò йскаше да видиш? 'Who did you want to see?'

На когò дàде рèчника? 'Who did you give the dictionary to?'

b) the dative form **комù** is usually replaced by a prepositional phrase **на** + the accusative form **когò**. The dative form **комù** sounds rather obsolete.

На когò (комù) предаохте 'Who did you deliver the letter to?/To whom did you deliver the letter?'

The interrogative pronouns can be used independently and adjectivally:

**Каквò** ще бýде врèмето 'What will the weather be like tomorrow?'

**Каквò** книги предпочташ? 'What (kind of) books do you prefer?'

The pronoun **каквò** when used independently refers to the Object when it is not a person:

**Каквò** ще ми препоръчаш? 'What would you recommend (to me)?'

The interrogative pronouns denoting possession **чий**, **чия**, **чие**, **чии** may optionally be replaced by the prepositional phrase:

**Чий/на** когò е този учèбник? 'Whose is this textbook? (Who does this textbook belong to?)'

**Чия/на** когò е тàзи химикàлка? 'Whose is this pen?'

**Чие/на** когò е детèто? 'Whose is the child?'

**Чий/на** когò са тèзи книги? 'Whose ate these books?'

Note that **на** когò is the same form for all genders and plural.

The pronoun **кòлко** (denoting quantity) is used for all genders singular and plural. Masculine nouns denoting objects and ending in a consonant have a special form for the plural when preceded by the pronoun **кòлко**:

Кòлко лèва стрùва тàзи чàнта? 'How much (how many levs) is that handbag?'

Кòлко рèчника кùпихте? 'How many dictionaries have you bought?'

BUT with nouns for people the usual plural form is used:

Кòлко студèнти изпitàхте 'How many students have you examined so far?'

In contrast to English, **кòлко** is used with both countable and uncountable nouns:

Кòлко чàса ще ѡмате ўтре? 'How many classes are you going to have tomorrow?'

Кòлко врèме мòжеш да ми отделиш? 'How much time can you spare me?'

The Russian interrogative pronouns are quite similar to the Bulgarian ones:

Russian	Bulgarian	English
кто	кой	'who'
что	каквò/що	'what'
когò	когò	'whom'

какой	какъв	'what' (masc.)
какая	каквà	'what' (fem.)
какое	каквò	'what' (neut.)
какие	каквì	'what' (pl.)
чей	чий	'whose' (masc.)
чья	чия	'whose' (fem.)
чье	чие	'whose' (neut.)
чи	чий	'whose' (pl.)
сколько	кòлко	'how many/much'

## 6. Relative Pronouns

### Относителни местоимения

Relative pronouns are formed by adding the morpheme *-то* to the interrogative pronouns:

	masc.	fem.	neut.	plural
Persons & objects	<b>кòйто</b>	<b>коятo</b>	<b>коèто</b>	<b>коùто</b>
	'who/which/that'			
Only for persons	<b>когòто</b> , Preposition + <b>когòто</b> 'who/whom/that'			
Denoting quality	<b>какъвто</b>	<b>каквàто</b>	<b>каквòто</b>	<b>каквìто</b>
	'such.../as'			
Denoting possession	<b>чийто</b>	<b>чиятo</b>	<b>чиèто</b>	<b>чиùто</b>
	'whose'			
Denoting quantity	<b>кòлкото</b>			
	'as many/much... as'			

Relative pronouns introduce all sorts of dependent clauses. Most of the relative pronouns agree in gender and number with the word they qualify in the main clause.

Как се кàзва момìчето, <b>коèто</b> токù-що влèзе?	'What's the name of the girl who has just come in?'
Не обѝчам хòрата, <b>които</b> лèсно се сърдят.	'I don't like people who easily lose their temper.'
Товà, <b>коèто</b> той кàза, беше йстина.	'What he said was true.'
Нìкога нàма да намèриш та- къв приятел, <b>какъвто</b> е той.	'You'll never find such a friend as he is.'

The relative pronouns denoting possession *чѝто*, *чиятo*, *чиèто*, *чиùто* agree in gender and number not with the noun in the main clause, but with the word it precedes in the subordinate clause:

Товà бèше случка, <b>чиèто</b> значèние не разбìрах тога- ва.	'It was an event, whose importance I did not realize at the time.'
---	--

The pronoun <b>кòлкото</b> does not change in gender and number: Тя не è тòлкова добrà, <b>кòлкото</b> изглèжда.	'She is not as good-natured as she seems to be.'
Мòга да ти заèма тòлкова парì, <b>кòлкото</b> ти трàбват.	'I can lend you as much money as you need.'

In contrast to English, Bulgarian relative pronouns are never omitted.

In Russian, similarly to English (and not to Bulgarian) the interrogative pronouns are used as relative pronouns.

Он оставàлся в Москвè стòль- ко дней, <b>скòлько</b> мог.	'He stayed in Moscow as many days as he could (afford).'
--	---

## 7. Indefinite Pronouns

### Неопределителни местоимения

Indefinite pronouns are formed by adding the prefix *ня-*, *не-* to the Interrogative Pronouns. The numerals *един*, *една*, *едно*, *едни* are also used as Indefinite pronouns denoting persons and objects.

	masc.	fem.	neut.	plural
For persons and objects	<b>нàкoй</b>	<b>нàкoя</b>	<b>нàкoe</b>	<b>нàкou</b>
	'somebody/some, anybody/any'			
Only for persons	<b>нàкogo</b> , preposition + <b>нàкogo</b>			
	'someone/somebody/anybody'			
For objects	<b>нèщo</b>			
	'something/anything'			
For quality	<b>нàкакъв</b>	<b>нàкаква</b>	<b>нàкакво</b>	<b>нàкакви</b>
	'some'			
For possession	<b>нèчий</b>	<b>нèчия</b>	<b>нèчие</b>	<b>нèчии</b>
	'someone's/somebody's'			
For quantity	<b>нàкoлko</b>			
	'several/some/a few/a number of'			

In Russian language indefinite pronouns are formed by adding the suffix **-то** or **-нибùдь** (both spelled with a hyphen) after the interrogative pronouns :

кто-то	что-то	чей-то	какой-то
кто-нибùдь	что-нибùдь	чей-нибùдь	какой-нибùдь
'someone'	'something'	'someone's'	'some'

The Russian pronouns meaning 'several' is **нèсколько** and is close to the Bulgarian **нàкoлko**.

Indefinite pronouns can be used both adjectively (as attributes) and independently:

<b>Нàкou</b> хòра предпочитат да хòдят на планинà, а друѓи - на морè.	'Some people prefer going to the mountains, others - to the seaside.'
Има ли <b>нàкoй</b> в стàята?	'Is there anyone in the room?'

The masculine indefinite pronoun **нàкoй** has a special form **нàкoco**, which occurs in Direct Object position or after preposition:

Търсите ли **нàкogo**?

Ще попитам **нàкogo**.

Дай на **нàкogo** ключа.

Мìслиш ли за **нàкogo**?

The pronoun **нèщo** is used for animals and inanimate objects:  
**Нèщo** се двìжи там.

Имаш ли да кàжеш **нèщo**?

The indefinite pronouns for quality, possession and quantity occur only attributively:

Има ли **нàкакво** значèние?

Той говорèше с **нàкакъв** човèк на улицата.

Предлòжиха ни **нàкoлko** билèта за óпера.

Masculine inanimate nouns ending in a consonant, combined with the pronoun have a special form for the plural:

**нàкoлko** стòла/учèбника

'Does it make any difference? (Is it of any importance?)

'He was talking to some man in the street.'

'We've been offered a few (several) tickets for the opera.'

**BUT with persons:**

**нàкoлko** студèнти/асис-тèнти

'several chairs/textbooks'

'several students/assistant professors'

### Negative Pronouns

#### Отрицателни местоимения

Negative pronouns are formed by adding the prefix **ни-** in front of Interrogative pronouns.

	masc.	fem.	neut.	plural
For persons and objects	<b>нàкoй</b>	<b>нàкoя</b>	<b>нàкoe</b>	<b>нàкou</b>
	'nobody/noone/no'			
Only for persons	<b>нàкogo</b> , preposition + <b>нàкogo</b>			
	'nobody/anyone/anybody'			
For objects animate & inanimate	<b>нàщo</b>			
	'nothing/anything'			

	masc.	fem.	neut.	plural
For quality	<b>ни́какъв</b>	<b>ни́каква</b>	<b>ни́какво</b>	<b>ни́какви</b>
				'no'
For possession	<b>ни́чий</b>	<b>ни́чия</b>	<b>ни́чие</b>	<b>ни́чии</b>
				'nobody's'
For quantity	<b>ни́колко</b>			
				'none'

Similarly in Russian negative pronouns are formed by adding the same prefix to interrogative pronouns:

Russian	Bulgarian	English
никтò	ни́квой	'nobody'
ничтò	ни́що	'nothing'
ничèй	ни́чий	'nobody's'
никакòй	ни́какъв	'no'
нискòлько	ни́колко	'none'

In Russian there are also negative pronouns formed with the prefix **не-** which denote absence of object. In Bulgarian there are no similar pronouns:

Russian	Bulgarian	English
Мне нèкого ждать.	Нàма когò да чàкам.	'There is nobody to wait for.'
Мне нèчего читàть.	Нàма каквò да четà.	'There is nothing to read.'

In contrast to English the negative pronouns in Bulgarian always co-occur with the negative form of the verbs. Double negation is a typical feature of the Bulgarian language.

<b>Нàквой</b> не мì кàза, че си дошгъл.	'Nobody told me you have come.'
<b>Нàквой</b> от приятелките ми не живèе наблизо.	'None of my girlfriends lives near here.'

The double negation is typical for Russian, too:

Russian	Bulgarian	English
Яничегò не читàл.	Азнишо не съм	'I haven't read anything.'

When the masculine negative pronoun **ни́квой** functions as a Direct Object and is used independently only for persons it has the form **ни́кого** and when it occurs in Indirect Object position - preposition + **ни́кого**:

Отвòрих вратàта, но не можàх да вѝдя **ни́кого**.

Мòля те, не гò дàвай **на нíкого**.

**За нíкого** не сè сèщам.

**С нíкого** не сè срèщам.

'I opened the door but I could not see anyone.'

'Please, don't give it to anybody.'

'I can't think of anyone.'

'I don't date anybody.'

The negative pronoun **ни́що** refers to animate and inanimate objects:

**Нàщо** не вѝждам.

'I don't see anything.'

The negative pronouns denoting quality and possession are used adjectively:

Той не мì е **ни́какъв** приятел.

'He is no friend of mine.'

Нàмам **ни́какви** парѝ.

'I've got no money.'

- Чий са тèзи книгì?

'Whose are those books?'

- **Нàчии**. Намèрих ги на

'Nobody's. I found them left

пèйката.

on the bench.'

The negative pronoun denoting quantity and number **ни́колко** corresponds to the English pronoun 'none':

- Кòлко дùми наùчи днèс?

'How many words have you learnt today?'

- **Нàколко**. Болèше ме главàта.

'None. I had a headache.'

## 9. Generalizing Pronouns

### Обобщителни местоимения

The Generalizing Pronouns in Bulgarian are formed by adding the prefix **всì- /все-** before interrogative pronouns.

	masc.	fem.	neut.	plural
For persons and objects	<b>всèки</b> (всàкой)	<b>всàка</b> (всàкоя)	<b>всàко</b> (всàкое)	<b>всèки</b> (всàкои)

	masc.	fem.	neut.	plural
Only for persons	<i>всёкого</i> , preposition + <i>всёкого</i> 'each, everybody, everyone'			
Only for objects	<i>всичко</i> 'everything'			
For quality	<i>всякакъв</i>	<i>всякаква</i>	<i>всякакво</i>	<i>всякакви</i> 'all kinds of/any'
For quantity	<i>всичкият</i>	<i>всичката</i>	<i>всичкото</i>	<i>всичките</i> 'all, every'

In Russian the generalizing pronouns are:

masc.	fem.	neuter	pl.	
каждый	каждая	каждое	каждые	'each (one)'
любой	любая	любое	любые	'each one, any one'
всякий	всякая	всякое	всякие	'all kinds of'
весь	вся	все	все	'all, the whole quantity'

The generalizing pronouns occur independently and adjectively in Bulgarian:

*Всички*, който ѝскат би-  
лèти, да дойдат тук.

'All who would like tickets,  
should come here.'

*Всичко* се промèня.

'Everything changes.'

Вземайте тèзи хàпчета  
на *всёки* три чàса.

'Take these pills every three  
hours.'

The pronoun *всёки* used independently has the form *всёкого* when it occurs in Direct Object position and a preposition + *всёкого* when it occurs in Indirect Object position. The dative case *всёкому* is rather obsolete.

*За* *всёкого* ще Ѯма рàбота.

'There will be employment for  
everyone.'

*На* *всёкого* отговàряше  
търпелѝво.

The generalizing pronouns used adjectively define the noun and the noun does not take the definite article.

*Всèки* студèнт трàбва да 'Every student must solve the  
решь задàчата.'

## V. VERBS

### ГЛАГОЛИ

The Bulgarian language has a rather complex system of verbal forms. The verbal system is usually associated with the grammatical categories of person, number, tense, voice and mood.

The verbs in Bulgarian have lost their infinitive during the evolution of the language and in the contemporary language the basic, dictionary form is the first person singular of the present tense, while in Russian, as in English, verbs have an infinitive:

Bulgarian	Russian	English
чета	читать	'to read'
работя	работать	'to work'
глèдам	смотреть	'to look at, watch'
отивам	идти	'to go'
помàгам	помочь	'to help'

### 5.1. Classification of Verbs

#### Класификация на глаголите

According to some semantic and formal criteria verbs may be classified into:

- Transitive - Intransitive
- Personal - Impersonal
- Reflexive - Non-Reflexive
- Simple - Compound

#### A. Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

##### Преходни и непреходни глаголи

a) Transitive verbs usually denote an action passing over to some person or non-person, presented in the sentence by a Direct Object. The

simple Verb Phrase in Bulgarian consists of a verbal form plus one or more complements:

Лèкарят преглèда пациèнта. 'The doctor examined the (Subject) (Verb) (Object) patient.'

In some cases if the Object of a transitive verb is omitted the sentence may sound quite wrong or entirely different in meaning:

\*Лèкарят преглèда... 'The doctor examined...'

In the passive transformation the recipient of the action usually appears as the Subject of the sentence:

Пациèнты бèше преглèдан 'The patient was examined by the doctor.'

Objects of transitive verbs are introduced directly, without a preposition: Записах адреса. 'I have written down the address.'

Transitive verbs may also occur intransitively (potential transitivity):

Серà четà стàтията, която ми дàде. 'I'm reading the article you gave me.'

BUT:

Мòжете ли да четèте без очилà?

Начертàйте кàртата на Бългàрия, мòдля.

Когàто чертàше, никога не сè усмìхваше.

Забелàзвам нàкаква промà-на у нèго.

BUT:

Прàвех се, че не забелàзвам. 'I pretended not to notice.'

Transitive verbs may co-occur with both a direct and a prepositional object:

Изпràти ли снимките на родители си? 'Have you sent the photographs to your parents?'

In contrast to English in Bulgarian it is not possible to place the Indirect Object to double object verbs right after the verb without a prepositional link, unless it is a personal pronoun.

Дàдох книгата на Нèли. 'I gave the book to Nelly.'

Дàдох на Нèли книгата. 'I gave to Nelly the book.'

Дàдох ѝ книгата. 'I gave her the book.'

but not: \*Дадох Нели книгата. 'I gave Nelly the book.'

b) Intransitive verbs do not take a direct object. The object is usually introduced by a preposition. The preposition may vary depending on the meaning and valency of the verb. The prepositional phrases are often adverbial in meaning and add some information about the verbal action.

Чèсто ли пътуваши със самолèт? 'Do you often travel by plane?'

Самà ли пътувахте из страната? 'Did you travel alone about the country?'

A great number of intransitive verbs are reflexive (they are accompanied by the reflexive pronoun *ce*):

Доближàваха се до сèлото. 'They were approaching the village.'

Катò детè страхùваше ли се от тьмнинàта? 'When you were a child, were you afraid of the dark?'

Той *ce* оплàкваше от болки в гърдите. 'He complained of pain in the chest.'

Трудно ми е да *ce* съгласà с вас за товà. 'I find it hard to agree with you about this.'

Стремèте *ce* към обектìвност в описàнието. 'You should strive after objectivity in your description.'

Ще *ce* бòрим за правàта си. 'We will fight for our rights!'

Some typically intransitive verbs in Bulgarian have transitive counterparts in English and vice versa.

Тя прилича на бащà си. 'She resembles her father.'

Тя Ѳска да се разведè с мъжà си. 'She wants to divorce her husband.'

Глèдах момàчето и си мìслех... 'I looked at the girl and thought...'

Знам, че никога не лòжеш приятелите си. 'I know you never lie to your friends.'

Some verbs show variation in colloquial usage and occur either transitively or intransitively:

минàвам грàнициата/минàвам през грàнициата 'cross the border'

игràя карти/игràя на кàрти 'play cards'

жадùвам нèшо/жадùвам за нèшо  
достìгам нèшо/достìгам до нèшо

'yearn/long for smth'  
'reach something'

## B. Personal and Impersonal Verbs

### Лични и безлични глаголи

Most of the verbs in Bulgarian are personal. They carry morphological information about the category of person, related to the Subject in their endings. The Subject of the sentence may either be expressed overtly or dropped:

#### Singular

1р.	Аз говоря./ Говоря.	'I am speaking.'
2р.	Игрàеш ли бридж?	'Do you play bridge?'
3р.	Пìше.	'He/she is writing.'

#### Plural

1р.	Ще хòдим на тèатър.	'We are going to the theatre.'
2р.	Излìзате ли?	'Are you going out?'
3р.	Пèят.	'They are singing.'

Impersonal sentences do not have a grammatical subject. According to their endings the verbs are (formally) in the third person singular. They usually denote:

#### a) natural phenomena

Валì.	'It's raining/snowing.'
Свечерìва се.	'It's growing dark'.
Гърмì.	'It's thundering'.
Застудява се.	'It is getting cold.'

#### In Russian:

Холодàет.	'It is getting cold.'
Темнìет.	'It is growing dark.'
Спì ми се.	'I feel sleepy.'
Не мì се спи.	'I don't feel sleepy.'
Не мì се пìе.	'I don't feel like drinking.'
Срàм ме е.	'I am ashamed.'

#### In Russian:

Мне не спàйтся.	'I don't feel sleepy.'
Мне стòидно.	'I am ashamed.'

c) Some verbs with modal meaning such as: юма 'there is/are', нàма

'there isn't/aren't'

Тук юма мнòго хòра.  
Нàма нìкого в стàята.  
Тя мòже да дòйде по-рàно.  
Трàбва да трòгваме.

#### In Russian:

Её нет дòма.  
Сдесь нè было остановки.  
Мòжно войти?

d) impersonal sentences may contain some other verbs, such as:  
изглèжда 'it seems, strùva mi сe 'it seems to me', личì си 'it is clear/evident', вìжда сe, че 'it is apparent that'

Изглèжда вàжно, че...  
Стрùва mi сe, че нàма да успèем да стìгнем наврèме.  
Личì си, че не стè прочèли тèкста внимàтелно.

#### In Russian:

Кàжется, он её не слùшал.  
'He did not seem to have heard her.'

## C. Non-Reflexive and Reflexive Verbs

### Невъзвратни и възвратни глаголи

Non-Reflexive (or ordinary) verbs consist of a single lexical unit: четà 'to read', хòдя 'to walk', пèя 'to sing', etc.

Reflexive verbs are derived by adding the short forms of the Reflexive Personal Pronoun *ce* and *cu*:

облìчам сe	'to dress oneself'
почìвам сi	'to take a rest'
усмìхвам сe	'to smile'
мìсля сi	'to think'

a) Direct or true reflexive verbs. In semantic terms the Subject of the sentence is both Agent and Patient (or recipient of the action). The short form of the reflexive pronoun *ce* may sometimes be replaced by *сèбе cu*.

Деçàта *ce* измìха и *ce* облякоха вèче.  
'The children have already washed and dressed (themselves).'

пиша (e) 'to write' - first conjugation  
 седя (и) 'to sit' - second conjugation  
 обичам (a) 'to love' - third conjugation

Singular			
	First	Second	Third
1p. аз	пиша	седя	обичам
2p. ти	пишеш	седиш	обичаш
3p. той/тя/то	пише	седи	обича
Plural			
1p. ние	пишем	седим	обичаме
2p. вие	пишете	седите	обичате
3p. те	пишат	седят	обичат

In Russian there are two conjugations:

	First 'to read'	Second 'to speak'
1p. я	читаю	говорю
2p. ты	читаешь	говоришь
3p. он/она/онò	читает	говорит
1p. мы	читаем	говорим
2p. вы	читаете	говорите
3p. они	читают	говорят

## 2. Aspect

### Вид на глагола

In contrast to English the category of aspect has morphological indicators in Bulgarian. Each verb has forms for the Imperfective and for the Perfective aspects. They form a grammatical opposition:

a) The perfective aspect (свършен вид) indicates that the action of the verb has been or will be completed and emphasis is laid on the result of the action:

**Купихме** много въглища 'We bought plenty of coal  
 преди да започне зимата. before the winter started.'

b) The imperfective aspect (несвършен вид) does not specify the completion of the action.

Тя обикновено си **купува** 'She usually buys her ready  
 готови дрехи.' made clothes.'

Thus, the same verbal action may be described from different perspectives by using either the perfective or the imperfective aspect of a verb:

Цял ден **печатах** на машина и  
**напечатах** тридесет  
 страници.

**Учих** два часа и **научих**  
 добре урока.

'I've been typing all day long  
 and I've typed out thirty  
 pages.'

'I spent two hours studying  
 and I've learned my lesson  
 quite well.'

In Russian verbs also form a grammatical opposition of imperfective and perfective aspect. Imperfective aspect verbs are used in the (1) present and (2) future complex tense, and perfective aspect verbs are used in the (3) past and (4) future simple tense:

- (1) Я читаю книгу. 'I am reading a book.'
- (2) Я буду читать долго. 'I will read for a long time.'
- (3) Я прочитал книгу. 'I read (finished reading).'
- (4) Я прочитаю книгу и пойду гулять. 'I will finish reading the book and will go out for a walk.'

## 3. The Tense System

The verbs in Bulgarian occur in nine tense forms. Three of them are simple: the Present, the Aorist Past and the Imperfect Past tenses. The remaining six tenses are compound: the Perfect, the Past Perfect, the Future, the Future in the Past, the Future Perfect and the Future in the Past tenses.

1. Present tense (Сегашно време)	живея	мисля
	'I live'	'I think'
	'I'm living'	'I'm thinking'
2. Imperfect Past (Минало несвършено време)	живеех	мислех
	'I was living'	'I was thinking'
3. Aorist Past (Минало свършено време)	живях	мислих
	'I used to live'	'I used to think'
4. Perfect (Минало неопределено време)	живял съм	мислил съм
	'I lived'	'I thought'
5. Past perfect (Минало предварително време)	бях живял	бях мислил
	'I've lived'	'I've thought'
	'I had lived'	'I had thought'

6. Future	<b>ще живèл</b>	<b>ще мìсля</b>
(Бъдеще време)	'I'll live'	'I'll think'
7. Future in the Past	<b>щàх да живея</b>	<b>щàх да мìсля</b>
(Бъдеще време в миналото)	'I was going to live'	'I was going to think'
8. Future Perfect	<b>ще съм живеял</b>	<b>ще съм мìслил</b>
(Бъдеще предвари- телно време)	'I will have lived'	'I will have thought'
9. Future Perfect in the Past	<b>щàх да съм живеял</b>	<b>щàх да съм мìслил</b>
(Бъдеще предварително време в миналото)	'I would have lived'	'I would have thought'

In Russian the system of tenses is simpler - verbs occur in three tenses - Present (настóящее врёмя - читàю), future simple and future compound (бùдущее врёмя простóе и бùдущее сложнóе - бùду читàть, прочитàю) and past tense (прошёдшее врёмя - прочитàл).

### 3.1. The Present Tense

#### Сегашно време

The present Tense is formed by the present stem of the verbs plus personal endings: if the present stem ends in *-e*, the verb is of 1st conjugation, in *-u* - of 2nd conjugation and in *-a* or *-я* - of 3rd conjugation:

	1st conjugation	2nd conjugation	3rd conjugation
az	<b>четà/живея</b>	<b>говòря/ùча</b>	<b>хвèрлям/пùтам</b>
I	read/live	speak/study	throw/ask
tu	<b>четèш/живеèш</b>	<b>говòриш/ùчиш</b>	<b>хвèрляш/пùташ</b>
you	read/live	speak/study	throw/ask
той/тия/то	<b>четè/живеè</b>	<b>говòри/ùчи</b>	<b>хвèрля/пùтама</b>
he/she/it	reads/lives	speaks/studies	throws/asks
ниè	<b>четèм/живеèм</b>	<b>говòрим/ùчим</b>	<b>хвèрляме/пùтаме</b>
we	read/live	speak/study	throw/ask
вие	<b>четèте/живеèте</b>	<b>говòрите/ùчите</b>	<b>хвèрляте/пùтаме</b>
you	read/live	speak/study	throw/ask
те	<b>четàт/живеèят</b>	<b>говòрят/ùчат</b>	<b>хвèрлят/пùтам</b>
they	read/live	speak/study	throw/ask

In Russian there are two conjugations of the verbs in the present tense - 1st conjugation читàю, читàеш and 2nd conjugation говорю,

говорѝшь.

#### Phonetic rules

When the endings *-a*, *-я* for the first person singular) and *-am*, *-ят* (for the third person plural) are stresses they are pronounced: [ə], [jə] and [ət], [jət]:

аз	вървà	[vər`vja]	'I walk'
	четà	[če`ta]	'I read'
	стóй	[sto`jə]	'I am standing'
те	вървàт	[vər`vjet]	'they walk'
	четàт	[če`tat]	'they read'
	стóйт	[sto`jet]	'they are standing'

The stress remains unchanged in all forms of the Present Tense.

Examples: знаà 'to know' - first conjugation.

	Singular	Plural
1p.	знаà	знаèм
2p.	знаèш	знаèте
3p.	знаè	знаèт

работя 'to work' - second conjugation

	Singular	Plural
1p.	работя	работим
2p.	работиш	работите
3p.	работи	работят
	разбíрам - 'to understand'	- third conjugation

	Singular	Plural
1p.	разбíрам	разбíраме
2p.	разбíраш	разбíрате
3p.	разбíра	разбíрат

The following verbs are irregular: съм 'to be', да дам 'to give' and the verb ям 'to eat':

	Singular	Plural
1p.	аз съм	ниè сме
2p.	ти си	вие сте
3p.	той/тия/то е	те са

The forms of the verb *съм* are not stressed except after the negative particle *не*.

The correspondent Russian verb **быть** is usually omitted in the present tense. The future tense is **я буду**, **ты будешь**, and the past tense **я был**, **была**, **мы были**.

The Bulgarian verbs for 'to eat' and 'to give':

	Singular	Plural
1p.	ям/дам	ядём/дадём
2p.	ядёш/дадёш	ядёте/дадёте
3p.	ядё/дадё	ядат/дадат

The consonant sounds [k] and [g] are changed into [č] and [ž] when they occur before the stem vowel [e] in verbs of the first conjugation:

	Singular	Plural
1p.	мòга 'can'	текà 'to flow'
2p.	мòга/текà	мòжем/течём
3p.	мòжеш/течёш	мòжете/течёте

In Russian similar phonetic changes are observed - **могу**, **можешь**, **теку**, **течёшь**.

Use:

Verbs in the present tense may denote:

a) actions, events or states that usually take place at the moment of speech:

**Нàкòй чùка** на вратàта.

**Предупреждàвам** ви, че ще ви стрùва скъпо.

**Не искате** ли чàша чай?

In Russian:

**Сейчàс я читàю инте-**  
**рèсную книгу.**

b) repeated or habitual action:

**Нàкога не закùсвам** в недèлja.

**Тя вѝнаги пристùга** полò вин час по-рàно.

**Тук рàдко вали** дъжд.

**Напослèдък** чèсто го **посещаvam.**

'Someone is knocking at the door.'

'I am warning you it's going to be expensive.'

'Wouldn't you like a cup of tea?'

'Now I am reading an interesting book.'

'I never eat breakfast on Sundays.'

'She always arrives half an hour earlier.'

'It seldom rains here.'

'Recently I've been visiting him quite often.'

In Russian:

Обычно по вечерам я смотрю телевидение.

c) general timeless statements, laws, regulations, etc.

Звукът **се разпространаvа** по-добрè във водата, от-  
кòлкото във въздуха.

Когàто врèмето е влàжно, алюминият **не сè окисляvа.**

In Russian:

Земля вращается вокрùг Солнца.

d) past actions or events - this is the so called 'historical present'.

The use of present tense forms instead of past tense ones makes the narrative more vivid. It is also used in sports commentaries.

През 681 година Визàнтия **признàва** българската държàва.

e) future actions

Влàкът **ми тръгва** в 11.30.

Той **се врьща** от Вàрна след-ващата сèмница.

Verbs of Imperfective aspect are most often used in the Present tense.

f) the present tense forms of verbs of the perfective aspect are often used in compound sentences to denote repeated or future action:

Той ще си кùпи книгата, **който** мu **препорàчам.**

Present tense verbs of the imperfective aspect often combine with the past tense forms of verbs of perception, such as:

мìсля 'think'

усèшам 'feel'

стрùва мi се 'it seems to me'

сънùвам 'dream', etc.

Сънùвах, че **летя** с балон над атлантìческия океан.

Мислех, че **сънùвam.** 'I thought I was dreaming.'

Почувства, че се *изчевлява*. 'She felt she was blushing.'

Both perfective and imperfective present forms are used after the conjunction *да* (and note that the verb forms after *да* are always present tense forms):

Искаш ли <i>да</i> ти <i>донасà</i> нещò?	'Would you like me to get something for you?'
Областният управител разпоредì <i>да</i> се <i>закрìе</i> болницата.	'The district court ordered the hospital closed.'
Ще дòйдеш ли <i>да</i> ми <i>помòгнеш</i> ?	'Will you come and help me?'
Той не обича <i>да</i> <i>рабòти</i> нòщем.	'He doesn't like working at night.'

Bulgarian	English
	Present Continuous
Present Tense	Present Simple
	Present Perfect
	Present Perfect Continuous

### 3.2. The Imperfect Past

#### *Минало несъвършено време*

##### Formation:

The Past Imperfect Tense is formed from the present stems of the verbs, which undergo some changes plus personal endings. The stress of the present stem is preserved.

##### Personal endings:

	Singular	Plural
1.	-x	-xme
2.	-ше	-xte
3.	-ше	-xa

##### First conjugation verbs

четà 'to read'	пишà 'to write'
Singular	
1p. четjàx	пишех
2p. четèше	пишеше
3p. четèше	пишеше

Plural		
1p.	четjàxme	пишехме
2p.	четjàxte	пишехте
3p.	четjàxa	пишеха
Second conjugation verbs		
вървà 'to walk'	мìсля 'to think'	мълчà 'to be silent'
Singular		
1p. вървàx	мìслех	мълчàх
2p. вървèше	мìслеше	мълчèше
3p. вървèше	мìслеше	мълчèше
Plural		
1p. вървàxme	мìслехме	мълчàхме
2p. вървàxte	мìслехте	мълчàхте
3p. вървàxa	мìслеха	мълчàха
Third conjugation verbs		
The past stem is the same as the present stem.		
питам 'to ask'	отговàрjam 'to answer'	кàчвам се 'to climb'
Singular		
1p. пàтah	отговàрях	кàчвах се
2p. пàтahše	отговàряше	кàчваше се
3p. пàтahše	отговàряше	кàчваше се
Plural		
1p. пàтahme	отговàряхме	кàчвахме се
2p. пàтahte	отговàряхте	кàчвахте се
3p. пàтahxa	отговàряха	кàчваха се

Some verbs of the second conjugation and all the verbs of the third conjugation have coinciding forms for the Imperfect and the Aorist past tenses, with the exception of the second and third person singular. The context and situation of the utterance usually help to distinguish between the two tenses.

Examples: горà 'to burn', обичам 'to love'

Imperfect Past	Aorist Past
Singular	
1p. горàx	обичах
2p. горèше	обичаше
3p. горèше	обичаше

Plural			
1р. горѧхме	оби чахме	горѧхме	оби чахме
2р. горѧхте	оби чахте	горѧхте	оби чахте
3р. горѧха	оби чаха	горѧха	оби чаха

The Imperfect Past forms of the auxiliary verb съм 'to be' coincide with the Aorist Past forms:

Singular		Plural	
1р. аз бях		ниe бѧхме	
2р.ти бѣше (бѣ)		вїе бѧхте	
3р.той/ти/то бѣше (бѣ)		те бѧха	

**Use:**

The Imperfect Past Tense frequently co-occurs with the Aorist Past tense. They are used together to describe or narrate past events.

a) The Imperfect Past tense usually denotes action in progress at a mentioned point in the past.

Вратàта се отвòри и видях,  
че цялото ѝ лицè грèеше  
от щастие.

Обърнах се. Тя ме глèдаше  
с укор.

'The door opened and I saw  
that her whole face was  
shining with happiness.'

'I turned. She was looking at  
me reproachfully.'

The Imperfect Past brings into perspective the duration of the past events and in this respect partly corresponds to the English Past Continuous Tense but may also be translated with the English Past Simple Tense.

*Седях и глèдах* морèто. 'I was sitting and looking at  
the sea/I sat looking at the sea.'

b) The Imperfect Past Tense is also used to denote habitual or repeated actions in the past. Its English translation may contain 'used to + Infinitive', 'would + Infinitive', 'Често се чувах виновен за това.'

Когато това се слùчи, че-  
сто се вѝждахме с Мария, а  
и хòдех много на опера.

Тя чèсто го чùваше да си  
мърмòри недовòлно.

Когато бях малък, вѝнаги

Past Simple or Past Continuous forms.

'I often felt guilty about  
this.'

'At the time it happened I was  
seeing a lot of Maria and I  
was going to the opera a lot.'

'She would often hear him  
grumbling to himself.'

'When I was a child we always

хòдехме на морè през ав-  
густ.

На връщане оставахме ня-  
колко дни при бàба и дàдо  
на сèло и се връщахме в  
София в началото на сеп-  
тèмври.

The Imperfect Past tense is used mainly with verbs of the Imperfec-  
tive Aspect.

c) The Imperfect Past tense is sometimes used to denote parallel  
activities.

Докатò обядвахме, се чудех  
каквà е причината за посе-  
щението ѝ.

d) In conditional sentences the Imperfect Past Tense has some  
additional modal functions. It denotes past, present or future probable  
activities. Verbs of both perfective and imperfective aspect may be used in  
Conditional clauses.

Ако ѝмах пòвчe врèме, не  
бих чел, а щях да съм в мо-  
мèнта на кѝно.

The Bulgarian Imperfect Past Tense quite often corresponds to the  
English Past Simple Tense. In translating from English into Bulgarian the  
English Past Simple Tense is almost equally divided between the Imperfect  
and the Aorist Past tenses.

Вратàта постóйнно се отвàряше. 'The door kept opening.'

В главàта му се въртèше  
някакво изречèние, остà-  
нало от училище.

Те се спогàждаха добrè две-  
те, не си завѝждаха и не  
си прèчеха.

Лòте плачеше, натякваше,  
заплашаше, че ще се вър-  
не в родината си.

Извèстно врèме двàмата

went on holiday to the seaside  
in August.'

On our way back we stayed with  
my grandparents in the country  
for a couple of days and came  
back to Sofia early in Sep-  
tember.'

'While we were having dinner I  
was wondering what the reason  
for her visit was.'

'If I had more time I wouldn't  
be reading, I would be at the  
cinema at the moment.'

The Bulgarian Imperfect Past Tense quite often corresponds to the  
English Past Simple Tense. In translating from English into Bulgarian the  
English Past Simple Tense is almost equally divided between the Imperfect  
and the Aorist Past tenses.

Вратàта постóйнно се отвàряше. 'The door kept opening.'

'A sentence, a remnant of his  
school days recurred to him.'

'The two of them got on very  
well together, they didn't  
envy each other and did not  
hinder each other.'

'Lotte cried, nagged and  
threatened she would go back  
to her country.'

'For some time the two of them

мълчаливо *слъзаха* по стълбите.

Той си я *спомняше* ясно.

Възможността *изглеждаше* превъзходна.

*Трънкаше* и *тръннеше* прозръчната дреха.

As in Russian there is only one past tense the correspondent forms to the Bulgarian Past Imperfect are imperfective verbs in the past tense (прошедшее время).

An action in progress:

Russian	Bulgarian	English
Когдà я писàл	Докатò пѝшех пи-	'While I was writing пѝсьма,
брат слы-	смà, брат ми слù-	letters my brother
шал мùзыку.	шаше мùзыка.	was listening to music.'

Repeated action:

Во врèмя каникул	През вакàнцията	'During the holidays
я кàждый день	аз всèки ден	I wrote to my mother
писàл màме.	пѝшех на мàйка си.	every day.'

Bulgarian	English
Imperfect	Past Continuous
Past	Past Simple
Tense	used to + inf., would + inf.

### 3.3. The Aorist Past Tense

#### *Минало свършено време*

Formation:

Personal endings:

	Singular	Plural
1p.	-x	-xme
2p.	0 (no ending)	-xme
3p.	0 (no ending)	-xa

The verbs of each conjugation are further subdivided into classes according to the vowel in the past stem (which is an old infinitive stem).

Verbs of the first and second conjugation form the Aorist Past tense

from the past stem plus personal endings.

Examples:

First conjugation - present stem vowel [e]

пѝша 'to write' четà 'to read' пèя 'to sing'

#### Singular

1p. пѝсах	чётох	пях
2p. пѝса	чёте	пя
3p. пѝса	чёте	пя

#### Plural

1p. пѝсахме	чётохте	пяхме
2p. пѝсахте	чётохте	пяхте
3p. пѝсаха	чётоха	пяха

Second conjugation - present stem vowel [i]

говòри 'to speak' спя 'to sleep' вървà 'to walk'

#### Singular

1p. говорих	спах	вървàх
2p. говори	спа	вървà
3p. говори	спа	вървà

#### Plural

1p. говорихме	спàхме	вървàхме
2p. говорихте	спàхте	вървàхте
3p. говориха	спàха	вървàха

Third conjugation - present stem vowels [a], [ja]

влиза 'to enter' отвàрям 'to open' стрèлям 'to shoot'

#### Singular

1p. влизах	отвàрях	стрèлях
2p. влиза	отвàря	стрèля
3p. влиза	отвàря	стрèля

#### Plural

1p. влизахме	отвàряхме	стрèляхме
2p. влизахте	отвàряхте	стрèляхте
3p. влизаха	отвàряха	стрèляха

the verb *съм* 'to be'

(auxiliary verb)

#### Singular

1p. аз бях	ние бàхме
2p. ти бèше (бè)	вие бàхте
3p. той/тя/то бèше (бè)	те бàха

The Russian equivalent is **быть** (infinitive) and the past tense has gender and plural: **был**, **была**, **было**, **были**.

Subdivision into classes according to the vowels of the past tense stems:

**First conjugation:**

**Class 1** - the past stem vowel is [o] in all forms except in the second and third person singular.

да съблекà 'to undress'	да дам 'to give'	да дойда 'to come'
<b>Singular</b>		
1р. съблàкох	дàдох	дойдòх
2р. съблèче	дàде	дойдè
3р. съблèче	дàде	дойдè
<b>Plural</b>		
1р. съблàкохме	дàдохме	дойдòхме
2р. съблàкохте	дàдохте	дойдòхте
3р. съблàкоха	дàдоха	дойдòха

Some other verbs belonging to the same class are:

четà 'to read'	ям 'to eat'
метà 'to sweep'	да доведà 'to bring along'
плетà 'to knit'	влекà 'to drag'
текà 'to flow/run'	крадà 'to steal'
растà 'to grow'	секà 'to cut down'

**Class 2** - the past stem vowel is [a]. No other changes occur in the stem. Over 400 verbs belong to this class.

Examples:]

да бùтна 'to push/tip down'	да вдìгна 'to pick up'	да лèгна 'to lie'
-----------------------------	------------------------	-------------------

<b>Singular</b>		
1р. бùтнах	вдìгнах	лèгнах
2р. бùтна	вдìгна	лèгна
3р. бùтна	вдìгна	лèгна
<b>Plural</b>		
1р. бùтнахме	вдìгнахме	лèгнахме
2р. бùтнахте	вдìгнахте	лèгнахте
3р. бùтнаха	вдìгнаха	лèгнаха

The present stem vowel [e] is omitted in a number of verbs:

берà 'to pick'      перà 'to wash'

**Singular**

1р. брах	прах
2р. бра	пра
3р. бра	пра

**Plural**

1р. бràхме	пràхме
2р. бràхте	пràхте
3р. бràха	пràха

Some other verbs belonging to the same class are:

да лèсна 'to polish', зовà 'to call by name/summon'

да блèсна 'to flash/glitter', ковà 'to hammer'

да màхна '1.to wave, 2.to put away', сновà 'to hurry up and down, to shuttle', etc.

**Class 3** - the past stem vowel is [a], preceded by a palatal consonant in the present stem. There are about 23 basic verbs, belonging to this class.

Examples:

кùпя 'to bathe'      трепèря 'to shiver'      да сùпя 'to pour'

**Singular**

1р. кùпах	трепèрàх	сùпах
2р. кùпа	трепèрà	сùпа
3р. кùпа	трепèрà	сùпа

**Plural**

1р. кùпахме	трепèрàхме	сùпахме
2р. кùпахте	трепèрàхте	сùпахте
3р. кùпаха	трепèрàха	сùпаха

Some other verbs belonging to this class are:

бùбря 'to chatter', хàпя 'to bite', дрèмя 'to doze, to nod off', мъмря 'to scold'

**Class 4** - the past stem vowel is [a] but some changes occur with the consonants preceding it. There are about 26 basic verbs, belonging to this class.

Examples of the consonant changes:

[ž] changes into [z]

да кàжа 'to say' 'to tell'    да вържа 'to tie'    рèжа 'to cut'

Singular		
1р. кàзах	вързах	рàзах
2р. кàза	върза	рàза
3р. кàза	върза	рàза
Plural		
1р. кàзахме	вързахме	рàзахме
2р. кàзахте	вързахте	рàзахте
3р. кàзаха	вързаха	рàзаха
[ž] changes into [g]		
лъжа 'to tell lies'	стрижа 'to cut one's hair'	стържа 'to scrape'
Singular		
1р. лъгах	стригах	стъргах
2р. лъга	стрига	стърга
3р. лъга	стрига	стърга
Plural		
1р. лъгахме	стригахме	стъргахме
2р. лъгахте	стригахте	стъргахте
3р. лъгаха	стригаха	стъргаха
[č] changes into [k]		
дъвча 'to shew'	плàча 'to weep, to cry'	тъпча 'to trample on'
Singular		
1р. дъвках	плàках	тъпках
2р. дъвка	плàка	тъпка
3р. дъвка	плàка	тъпка
Plural		
1р. дъвкахме	плàкахме	тъпкахме
2р. дъвкахте	плàкахте	тъпкахте
3р. дъвкаха	плàкаха	тъпкаха
[š] changes into [s]		
бърша 'to wipe'	мирѝша 'to smell'	пѝша 'to write'
Singular		
1р. бърсах	мирѝсах	пѝсах

2р. бърса	мирѝса	пѝса
3р. бърса	мирѝса	пѝса
Plural		
1р. бърсахме	мирѝсахме	пѝсахме
2р. бърсахте	мирѝсахте	пѝсахте
3р. бърсаха	мирѝсаха	пѝсаха

[št] changes into [sk]

дрàща 'to scratch'

Singular	Plural
1р. дрàсках	дрàскахме
2р. дрàска	дрàскахте
3р. дрàска	дрàскаха

Class 5 - the past stem vowel is [a], usually preceded by a palatal consonant. However, the consonant preceding the ending of the present stem is not palatal. There are six basic (or primary) verbs, belonging to this class, which form about 100 verbs by prefixation.

Examples:

да прострà 'to spread'    да допрà 'to touch'

Singular
1р. прострàх
2р. прострà
3р. прострà
Plural
1р. прострàхме
2р. прострàхте
3р. прострàха

Class 6 - the past stem vowel is [a] preceded by [j]. Very few verbs belong to this class.

Examples:

трàя 'to last/endure' вàя 'to sculpture'

Singular	Plural
1р. трàях	вàях
2р. трàя	вàя
3р. трàя	вàя

Class 7 - there is no past stem vowel in this class. The present stem vowel is omitted and the preceding vowel of the lexical root remains. The most important group of verbs belonging to this class are those formed

with the very productive suffix **-ея**. This class contains about 250 basic verbs.

Examples:

живèа 'to live'	гордèа ce 'to be proud'	пèя 'to sing'
<b>Singular</b>		
1p. живèх	гордàх се	пях
2p. живà	гордà се	пя
3p. живà	гордà се	пя
<b>Plural</b>		
1p. живàхме	гордàхме се	пяхме
2p. живàхте	гордàхте се	пяхте
3p. живàх	гордàха се	пяха
пожелàя 'to wish/desire',	кryя 'to hide',	да чùя 'to hear'
<b>Singular</b>		
1p. пожелàх	крих	чух
2p. пожелà	кри	чу
3p. пожелà	кри	чу
<b>Plural</b>		
1p. пожелàхме	кryхме	чùхме
2p. пожелàхте	кryхте	чùхте
3p. пожелàх	кryха	чùха
плюя 'to spit',	гуляя 'to carouse'	шляя ce 'to loiter' to feast'
<b>Singular</b>		
1p. плюх	гулях	шлях се
2p. плю	гуля	шля се
3p. плю	гуля	шля се
<b>Plural</b>		
1p. плюхме	гуляхме	шляхме се
2p. плюхте	гуляхте	шляхте се
3p. плюха	гуляха	шляха се

### Second Conjugation

Class 1 - the past stem vowel is [i], that is, the same as the present stem vowel. There are over 1000 basic verbs belonging to this class.

The verbs in this class may be further subdivided according to stress rules:

a) the stress is on the final syllable:

благодарà	брóя	да решà
'to thank'	'to count'	'to decide, solve'
<b>Singular</b>		
1p. благодарàх	брóих	решàх
2p. благодарà	брóй	решàй
3p. благодарà	брóй	решàй
<b>Plural</b>		
1p. благодарàхме	брóихме	решàхме
2p. благодарàхте	брóихте	решàхте
3p. благодарàх	брóйха	решàхха

b) the stress is not on the final syllable:

мìсяя 'to think', плàша 'to frighten', пùша 'to smoke'

1p. мìслíх	плàших	пùших
2p. мìслí	плàши	пùши
3p. мìслí	плàши	пùши
<b>Plural</b>		
1p. мìслíхме	плàшихте	пùшихте
2p. мìслíхте	плàшихте	пùшихте
3p. мìслíхах	плàшиха	пùшиха

Class 2 - the past stem vowel is [ja] (i.e. [a] after a palatal consonant, spelt with я). There are about 73 basic verbs belonging to this class. The stress is on the final syllable:

летà 'to fly',	звèня 'to ring',	горà 'to burn'
<b>Singular</b>		
1p. летàх	звèнях	горàх
2p. летà	звèня	горà
3p. летà	звèня	горà
<b>Plural</b>		
1p. летàхме	звèняхме	горàхме
2p. летàхте	звèняхте	горàхте
3p. летàхах	звèняхха	горàхха

(Note the different pronunciation of present tense - аз летà [le'tjə] and the past tense - той летà [le'tja].)

Class 3 - the vowel of the past stem is [a], preceded by the consonants [ž] and [č]:

Examples:

държà 'to hold'

лежà 'to lie'      бръмчà 'to buzz'

**Singular**

1p. държàх

лежàх

бръмчàх

2p. държà

лежà

бръмчà

3p. държà

лежà

бръмчà

**Plural**

1p. държàхме

лежàхме

бръмчàхме

2p. държàхте

лежàхте

бръмчàхте

3p. държàха

лежàха

бръмчàха

Some exceptions, belonging to this class, are:

спя 'to sleep'

кòля 'to slaughter', рèша 'to comb'

**Singular**

1p. спах

клах

рèсах

2p. спа

кла

рèса

3p. спа

кла

рèса

**Plural**

1p. спàхме

клàхме

рèсахме

2p. спàхте

клàхте

рèсахте

3p. спàха

клàха

рèсаха

### Third Conjugation

The past stem is the same as the present stem. A lot of verbs belong to this category, since a great number of verbs are formed with the very productive verb-forming suffixes: *-a(m)*, *-ва-*, *-ува-*, *-ка-*, *-ира-*, *-изира-*, *-аса-*, *-иса-*, *-оса-*, *-диса-*, *-тиса-*.

Examples:

да боядисам

бързам

стрèлям

'to paint'

'to hurry'

'to shoot'

**Singular**

1p. боядисах

бързах

стрèлях

2p. боядиса

бърза

стрèля

3p. боядиса

бърза

стрèля

**Plural**

1p. боядисахме

бързахме

стрèляхме

2p. боядисахте

бързахте

стрèляхте

3p. боядисаха

купùвам

'to buy'

**Singular**

1p. купùвàх

2p. купùвà

3p. купùвà

**Plural**

1p. купùвàхме

2p. купùвàхте

3p. купùвàха

бързаха

кàшлям

'to cough'

**Singular**

кàшлях

кàшля

кàшля

**Plural**

кàшляхме

кàшляхте

кàшляха

стрèляха

вечèрям

'to dine/have supper'

вечèрях

вечèря

вечèря

**Plural**

вечèряхме

вечèряхте

вечèряха

### Use:

The verbs of the Aorist Past tense generally denote distinct past events.

Стрùната *се скъса*.

'The string broke.'

Състезàнието *свърши*.

'The race finished.'

Мъглата *се вдѝгна*.

'The fog lifted.'

Порàзах *се* с бръснàча.

'I cut myself with the razor.'

Тя *влèзе* в магазѝна и

'She went into the shop and

пойскa едѝн бял хляб.

asked for a loaf of white

бред.'

'I lived in Varna until I was

14.'

The Aorist Past Tense is frequently used for narration. Past events are usually presented as a succession of episodes:

Претъркùлнах *се* до ръбà

'I rolled over to the edge of

на леглото и сèднах.

За-

пàлих лàмпата и поглèд-

нах часòвника. След това

вдѝгнах слушàлката и дà-

дох нòмера на телефонѝската.

the number.'

With verbs of the Imperfective Aspect the Aorist past Tense focuses on the general occurrence of the action without any definite or concrete result.

Къде бèше? *Търсùх* те на-  
всíкъде.

'Where were you? I looked for  
you all over the place.'

The Aorist and the Imperfect Past Tenses are often used together in sentences describing past events.

**Забелѣзах**, че кибрѣтената клѣчка *трепѣреши* в прѣсти-  
те ми.

'I noticed that the match was shaking between my fingers.'

The Russian equivalent is the Past tense (прошѣдшее врѣмѧ). The difference is that the Bulgarian Aorist tense verbs have personal endings while in Russian they change only in gender and number: писа , писала, писа ло, писа ли wrote'; читал, читала, читало, читали 'read'.

The Bulgarian Aorist Past Tense is most often translated with the Past Simple Tense in English:

Класът <i>избухна</i> в смѧх.	'The class burst into laughter.'
Той <i>задържа</i> рѣстото.	'He kept the change.'
Човѣкът <i>поклати</i> отри- цателно глава.	'The man shook his head.'

Bulgarian	English
The Aorist	Past Simple Tense

### 3.4. The Perfect Tense

#### *Минало неопределено време*

##### Formation:

The Bulgarian Perfect Tense is formed from the Present Tense form of the Auxiliary verb *съм* 'to be' plus the Active Aorist Past Participle of the main verb. The Participle is formed by substituting the ending *-x* for the first person singular of the Aorist Past tense form with the suffix *-л:*

рабо�их 'I worked'	рабо�ил съм 'I have worked'
глѣда� 'I watched'	глѣдал съм 'I have watched'

In some cases the consonants [d] and [t] are dropped out:

чѣтох 'I read'	чел съм 'I have read'
навѣдох се 'I bent down'	навѣл съм се 'I have bent down'

The Active Aorist past Participle has a zero ending for the Masculine Singular, *-a* for Feminine Singular, *-o* for Neuter Singular and *-u* for the Plural. The Participle is used as a component of compound tense forms and as an Attribute.

Masculine	Singular	Neuter
1p. аз съм писал	аз съм писала	
2p. ти си писал	ти си писала	ти си писало
3p. той е писал	тя е писала	то е писало

'I have written'  
'you have written'  
'he/she/it has written'

Plural	
1p. ние сме писали	'we have written'
2p. виѣ сте писали	'you have written'
3p. те са писали	'they have written'

##### Word order

When the Participle is at the beginning of a sentence it is followed by the Auxiliary verb *съм* 'to be':

Чѣл съм тѣзи книга.	'I have read this book.'
Глѣдал ли си тѣзи филм?	'Have you seen this film?'

If a sentence begins with some other word (a pronoun, a negative particle, an adverbial, etc.) the Auxiliary verb *съм* 'to be' precedes the Participle.

Не съм глѣдал тѣзи филм.	'I haven't seen this film.'
Вѣче сме обядвали.	'We have already had lunch.'
Стрѣва ми се, че съм слѣ- шала тѣзи пѣсен.	'I seem to have heard this song.'

The short form of the personal pronouns *ме, те, го, я... ми, ти, му, и...й* (accusative and dative) and the reflexive particles *се, си* follow the Auxiliary verb *съм* 'to be', except in the third person singular, when they precede the forms of the Auxiliary verb *съм* 'to be':

1p. аз съм го пѣтал/а/о	'I've asked him.'
2p. ти си го пѣтал/а/о	'You've asked him.'
3p. той/ти/тѣ го е пѣтал/а/о	'He/she/it has asked him.'

1p. ние сме го пѣтили	'We've asked him.'
2p. виѣ сте го пѣтили	'You've asked him.'
3p. те са го пѣтили	'They've asked him.'

Тя си е облякла новата рокля.

Те са си променили адреса.

When there are two pronouns - accusative and dative - the accusative follows the dative:

аàс съм му го дàл/a/o  
обяснил/a съм й ги

'She has put on her new dress.'

'They have changed their address.'

'I've given it to him/her/it.'  
'I've explained them to her.'

The interrogative particle *ли* is placed after the participle:

Ти глèдал ли си го?

'Have you seen it?'

In the indicative form the stress falls on the participle and the Auxiliary verb forms are not stressed. However, in the Negative form both the Auxiliary verb and the participle are stressed:

чèл съм го  
не съм го чèл

'I've read it.'  
'I haven't read it.'

#### Use:

The Perfect tense (минало неопределено време) refers to some event or action in the past, which is linked to or relevant for the present through its result, its consequences or in some other way. That means that the past event expressed by the Perfect Tense has affected the present stage of things.

Бил съм в Пловдив.

Той не е пристигнал още.

Телевизорът на майка ми се е повредил.

Прочèл ли си статията, която ти дàдох?

'I have been to Plovdiv.'

'He hasn't arrived yet.'

'My mother's TV set has broken down.'

'Have you read the paper I gave you?'

Generally the time of the action denoted by the Perfect Tense is not specified. It is, however, understood as more or less recent from the point of view of the moment of speaking.

The Russian equivalent is again the Past tense (прошедшее время):

Russian

Bulgarian

English

Я читал эту книгу. Чел съм тази книга. 'I have read this book.'

The Bulgarian Perfect Tense (минало неопределено време) roughly corresponds to the English Present Perfect Tense in some of its functions:

Нали не си изгùбила билета?

Мìсля, че не са разбрàли разликата между свършения и нèсвършения вид.

Чùвал съм всùчки твòи аргументи.

With the Bulgarian Perfect Tense the time of the action may be specified in some cases, although the emphasis remains on the action and its consequences. Then the English translation equivalents are usually in the Past Simple Tense:

- Обàждал ли си се днèс?  
- Да, обàждал съм се. Около 9 часà.

'Did you phone today?'  
'Yes, I did. At about 9.00.'

Verbs of the imperfective aspect, used in the Perfect Tense (минало неопределено време) often co-occur with adverbs:

понякога

'sometimes'

чèсто

'often, frequently'

рàдко

'rarely, seldom'

вùнаги

'always'

някога

'ever'

никога

'never', etc.

Понякога съм закъснявала за срèщите си.

'I have sometimes been late for my appointments.'

Чèсто съм мìслил за това.

'I've often thought about it.'

Вùнаги сме го считали за изключително сериозен човèк.

'We've always considered him an extremely reliable person.'

Because of its connection with the moment of speaking the Perfect tense frequently occurs in conversations and communications dealing with the state of things at present.

Зашò си тòлкова грùбa с нèго? Каквò е напрàвил?  
Добрè ли се чùвстваш? Отдàвна не си хòдила на лèкар.

'Why are you so rude to him?  
What has he done?'  
'Do you feel well? It's been a long time since you've seen a doctor for a checkup.'

When used with verbs of perfective aspect the Perfect tense usually denotes some state.

Мисля, че черèшите  
са узрèли.

Водàта в радиàтора  
е замрèзнала.

Рекàта е почàти пресъхнала.

The Perfect tense is often used in questions and negative statements:

Нìкога не съм очàквала  
да стàне чùдо.

Слùчвало ли ти се е нèщо  
подобно досегà?

The Perfect tense sometimes occurs in Subordinate Clauses, qualifying verbs, such as: *мìсля* 'to think', *знал* 'to know', *разбìрал* 'to understand', 'to realize', *кàзвам* 'to say/tell', *усéщам* 'to feel', *изглèжда* 'it seems', etc., meaning actions preceding those of the main clause.

Скòро ще разбèрàт, че са  
сгрешili.

Мислиш ли, че той ни  
е предàл?

Трàбва да му кàжа, че вèче  
са се разбрàли.

'I believe the cherries are  
ripe/have ripened.'

'The water in the radiator has  
frozen.'

'The river is almost dry.'

'I've never expected a miracle  
to happen.'

'Has anything similar happened  
to you before?'

'They'll soon realize they've  
made a mistake.'

'Do you think he has betrayed  
us?'

'I must tell him they have  
already settled their  
argument.'

Bulgarian	English
Perfect	Present Perfect
Tense	Past simple

### 3.5. The Past Perfect Tense

#### Минало предварително време

##### Formation:

The Bulgarian Past Perfect Tense is formed from the Past tense forms of the Auxiliary verb *съм* 'to be' plus the Active Aorist Participle of the main verb.

##### Singular

1p. аз бях замìнал/a

'I had left'

2p. ти бèше замìнал/a/o

3p. той/тя/то бèше замìнал/a/o

##### Plural

1p. ние бàхме замìнали

2p. вие бàте замìнали

3p. те бàха замìнали

##### Word Order

The Auxiliary verb is usually placed before the Participle:

Бàхме покàнили и брат ѹ.  
'We had also invited her  
brother.'

Бàха ли си отìшли гòстите,  
когàто ми се обàди?  
'Had the guests left when you  
rang me up?'

The short form of the personal pronouns *ме, те, го, я... ми, ти, ми, и...* (accusative and dative), the reflexive particles *ce, cu* and the interrogative particle *ли* are placed between the Auxiliary verb and the Participle:

Бèше *ce* обрèснал и облà-  
къл.  
'He had shaved and dressed.'

Бащà ти бèше *ли* се вèрнал,  
когàто се прибрà снощи?  
'Was your father back when you  
got home last night?'

When there are two short pronoun forms the dative precedes the accusative.

Бях *му го* дàл вèче.  
'I had already given it to him.'

The negative particle *не* precedes the two components of the Past Perfect Tense - the Auxiliary verb and the Participle:

Отдàвна *не* бàх се срèшал  
с приятеля си.  
'I had not met my friend for a  
long time.'

##### Use:

The Past Perfect Tense denotes actions or states prior to some moment in the past. The Bulgarian Past Perfect tense roughly corresponds to the English Past Perfect Tense or to the Past Perfect Continuous. (Sometimes its English translation equivalents may be in the Past Simple or Past Perfect Continuous Tense).

Когàто пристìгнах, тя вè-  
че бèше чàкала на опàшка-  
та за билèти половин час.  
'When I arrived she had al-  
ready been waiting in the  
queue for tickets for half an  
hour.'

Бях се събудил вèче, кога-  
то звънна будилникът.  
Не бèше съвсем непознат -  
бях го срèштал веднèж пре-  
дè това.  
Тя нòсеше бяло копринено  
шàлче. Бях ѝ го подарил за  
рождèния ѹ ден.

'I had already woken up when  
my alarm clock went off.'  
'He wasn't exactly a stranger.  
I had met him once before.'

'She wore a white silk scarf.  
I had given it to her as a  
birthday present.'

### 3.6. The Future Tense

#### Бъдеще време

##### Formation:

The Future Tense is formed from the future auxiliary particle *ще* plus the Present Tense form of the main verb. The auxiliary particle usually precedes the Present Tense form of the main verb.

##### Singular

1р. аз ще излýза	'I'll go out'
2р. ти ще излèзеш	'you'll go out'
3р. той/тя/то ще излèзе	'he/she/it will go out'

##### Plural

1р. ние ще излèзем	'we'll go out'
2р. вие ще излèзете	'you'll go out'
3р. те ще излèзат	'they'll go out'

In negative sentences the auxiliary particle *ще* is replaced by the form *няма да*. Negative forms with *не ще* still occur (for example in poetry) but are rather obsolete.

##### Singular

1р. аз нýма да се вèрна	'I won't come back'
2р. ти нýма да се вèрнеш	'you won't come back'
3р. той/тя/то нýма да се вèрне	'he/she/it won't come back'

##### Plural

1р. ние нýма да се вèрнем	'we won't come back'
2р. вие нýма да се вèрнете	'you won't come back'
3р. те нýма да се вèрнат	'they won't come back'

##### Word Order

The interrogative particle *ли* is added after the main verb to form interrogative sentences.

##### Тя ще закъснèе ли?

In the negative-interrogative form of the Future Tense the particle *ли* is placed after *няма*:

Нýма ли и ти да отидеш?

'Will she be late?'

The short personal, possessive and reflexive pronoun forms stand between the auxiliary particle and the main verb:

Ще *му* помôгна.

'I'll help him.'

Нýма да *им* кàжем.

'We will not tell them.'

Ще *се* срèщнем ли довèчера?

'Will we meet tonight?'

Ще *си* го кùпя.

'I'll buy it.'

If there are two pronoun forms the accusative stands after the dative:

Ще *му* го обясниш ли?

'Will you explain it to him?'

Нýма ли да ѹ го дадèш?

'Aren't you going to give it to her?'

Ще *ви* ги покàжа.

'I'll show them to you.'

### THE FUTURE TENSE OF THE VERB СЪМ

The verb *съм* 'to be' has two forms for the Future Tense in Bulgarian. The forms in brackets are less frequent. The forms with *бъда* are stylistically neutral and are preferable to use.

##### Positive Statements

##### Singular

1р. аз ще бъда (ще съм)	'I will be'
2р. ти ще бъдеш (ще си)	'you will be'
3р. той ще бъде (ще е)	'he will be'
тя ще бъде (ще е)	'she will be'
то ще бъде (ще е)	'it will be'

##### Plural

1р. ние ще бъдем (ще сме)	'we will be'
2р. вие ще бъдете (ще сте)	'you will be'
3р. те ще бъдат (ще са)	'they will be'

##### Negative Statements

##### Singular

1р. аз нýма да бъда (нýма да съм)	'I won't be'
2р. ти нýма да бъдеш (нýма да си)	'you won't be'
3р. той нýма да бъде (нýма да е)	'he won't be'
тя нýма да бъде (нýма да е)	'she won't be'

то нàма да бàде (нàма да е) 'it won't be'

**Plural**

1р. нàе нàма да бàдем (нàма да сме) 'we won't be'

2р. вàе нàма да бàдете (нàма да сте) 'you won't be'

3р. те нàма да бàдат (нàма да са) 'they won't be'

The Russian future tense of the verb *быть* is quite similar:

1р. я бùду, не бùду мы бùдем, не бùдем

2р. ты бùдешь, не будешь вы бùдете, не бùдете

3р. он/она/онò бùдет, не бùдет онù бùдут, не бùдут

**Use:**

The Future Tense is used to denote some action or state, which is supposed or expected to take place at a time following the moment of speech.

Къде ще живèете, когато се ожèните?

'Where are you going to live when you get married?'

Нàма да запòчнем вечèрята без нàя.

'We'll not start dinner without her.'

The Future Tense may occur with verbs of both the Imperfective and the Perfective aspect. Perfective aspect verbs refer to the completion of a future activity, while imperfective aspect verbs denote repetition of future activities.

Утрè ще стàна в 6.30, ще закùся и ще отѝда да игрàя тèнис.

'Tomorrow I'll get up at 6.30, have breakfast and go to play tennis.'

Цàла сèдмица ще стàвам в 6.30, ще закùсвам редòвно и ще хòдя на тèнис.

'For a whole week I'll be getting up at 6.30, I'll be having breakfast regularly and then I'll be going to play tennis.'

Нàма да се вѝдим вèче.

'We'll never see each other again.'

Нàма да се вѝждаме пòвече.

'We'll stop meeting (going out together).'

In contrast to English, there is no sequence of tenses rule in Bulgarian and the Future tense frequently occurs in Subordinate Clauses where the verb is either in Present or in some of the past tenses. Actually the Future Tense of the verb in the Subordinate Clause means that its

action will be completed after that of the verb of the main clause.

Вестниците съобщàват, че утрè ще вали сняг.

Съобщàха, че през ноштà ще вали пролѝвен дъжд.

'The newspapers say it's going to snow tomorrow.'

'The weather forecast said there would be heavy showers during the night.'

In Conditional sentences the Future Tense verb in the main clause co-occurs with a present tense verb:

Ще те вѝдя през а̀вгуст, ако не замѝнеш за чужбина.

Ако не мù се обàдиш днес до 7.30, утрè ще бàде късно.

'I'll see you in August if you don't go abroad.'

'If you don't give him a ring by 7.30 tonight, it'll be too late tomorrow.'

The Russian equivalents for future of perfective verbs is future simple tense (будущее простое) and for imperfective - future compound (будущее сложное) formed with the future tense of *быть* plus infinitive: 'will write'

Russian		Bulgarian	
Perfective	Imperfective	Perf.	Imperf.
я напишù	бùду писàть	аз ще напàша	ще пѝша
ты напàшеш	бùдешь писàть	ти ще напàшеш	ще пѝшеш
он		той	
она напàшет	бùдет писàть	тя ще напàше	ще пѝше
онò		то	
мы напàшем	бùдем писàть	нàе ще напàшем	ще пѝшем
вы напàшете	бùдете писàть	вàе ще напàшете	ще пѝшете
онù напàшут	бùдут писàть	те ще напàшат	ще пѝшат

The negative in the Russian future tense is formed by adding the negative particle: не напàшу, не бùду писàть while in Bulgarian: нàма да напàша, нàма да пѝша.

The Bulgarian Future Tense corresponds to the English Future Simple, Future Continuous, Future in the Past (reported speech) and to the other forms expressing futurity (to be going to, Present Simple and Present Continuous with verbs of movement, etc.)

Ще те чàкам в три часà.

'I'll be waiting for you at three o'clock.'

Нàма да дòйда на рождè-

'I'm not coming to the

ния ден.  
Кой ще ти глèда бèбето утре  
вèчер?

The forms of the Future may express the modal meaning of potential readiness or capability to perform some activity.

Ще напишеш ли стàтията в  
определèния срок?

The Future forms may have imperative modality when pronounced with the proper intonation.

Когàто излèзе, *ще го следиши* неотстèпно чак до влàка. *Ще хòдиши* нехàйно и без да се обрьщаши.

A specific use of the Future Tense is when it denotes habitual or repeated action in the past:

Вìнаги, когàто отìвам при  
мàма, тя *ще ме попùти* как  
съм и *ще ми пригòтви* нèшо  
за ѡдене.

Сpòмням си каквò прàвеше  
башà ми, когàто се врьщаши  
от рàбота - *ще влèзе, ще*  
*сèдне* до пèчката и *ще за-*  
*пòчне* да ме разпàтва за  
училището.

Bulgarian

English

Future Simple Tense  
Future Continuous  
Future in the Past  
Other forms of expressing  
futurity - to be going to,  
Present Simple, etc.

birthday party.'  
'Who is going to baby-sit for  
you tomorrow evening?'

'Will you be able to finish  
the paper before the dead-  
line?'

'When he comes out you must  
follow him steadily until he  
gets on the train. Try to walk  
casually without looking  
around.'

'Whenever I go to my mother's  
place she would ask me how  
things are and would prepare  
something to eat.'

'I remember what my father  
used to do when he came back  
from work - he would come in,  
sit near the stove and would  
start asking questions about  
school.'

### 3. 7. The Future in the Past Tense

#### *Бъдеще време в миналото*

##### **Formation:**

The forms of the Future in the Past Tense consist of the Imperfect Past Tense of the Auxiliary verb *иà* plus *да* plus the Present Tense forms of the main verb. Both the Auxiliary and the main verbs are inflected for person and number (but not gender) with respect to the Subject of the sentence.

##### **Positive Statements:**

###### **Singular**

1р. аз щàх да кàжа  
2р. ти щèше да кàжеш  
3р. той/ти/то щèше да кàже

###### **Plural**

1р. нìе щàхме да кàжем  
2р. вие щàхте да кàжете  
3р. те щàха да кàжат

##### **Negative Statements:**

###### **Singular**

1р. аз нàмаше да пàтам  
2р. ти нàмаше да пàташ  
3р. той/ти/то нàмаше да пàта

###### **Plural**

1р. нìе нàмаше да пàтаме  
2р. вие нàмаше да пàтате  
3р. те нàмаше да пàтат

Note that the negative

##### **Word Order**

The short forms of the personal pronouns and the reflexive particles *ce*, *cu* are after *да*:

Щàх да *ѝ* кàжа пò-рàно. 'I was going to tell her earlier.'

Нàмаше да *му го* дàдèм. 'We weren't going to give it to him.'

Когà щàхте да *ce* срèщнете? 'When were you going to have a date?'

The interrogative particle *ли* is placed before *да*:

Те щàха *ли* да закùсят? 'Were they going to have breakfast?'

##### **Use:**

The Future Tense in the Past (бъдеще време в миналото) is used

to denote simple facts, habitual actions and succession of events in the future viewed from the past. The Future in the Past forms are usually dependent and occur in Subordinate clauses depending on verbs in the past tenses (mainly in the Aorist Past Tense).

Ти не знаеше ли, че щях да  
ти прости?

'Didn't you know I would  
forgive you?'

Когато го видях последния  
път, щеше да започва нова  
работа.

'When I saw him last he was  
starting on a new job.'

The Future in the Past often refers to events almost happened but  
did not take place after all:

Ако не ми беше закарал  
с колата, щях да закъснеш.

'If you had not given me a  
lift I would have been late.'

Тъкмо щях да излязъм.

'I was on the point of going out.'

Ох, щях да припадна от  
страх!

'I was so frightened, I was almost  
going to faint.'

These forms are frequently used in conditional sentences and are  
synonymous to the conditional mood.'

Bulgarian

English

Future in  
the Past

Future in the Past  
to be going to

### 3.8. The Future Perfect Tense

#### Бъдеще предварително време

##### Formation:

The forms of the Future Perfect Tense are formed by the Future Tense of the Auxiliary verb *съм/бъда* 'to be' plus the Active Aorist Past Participle.

##### Positive Statements:

###### Singular

1р. аз ще съм (бъда) заминял/а/о  
2р. ти ще си (бъдеш) заминял/а/о  
3р. той ще е (бъде) заминял  
тя ще е (бъде) заминяла  
то ще е (бъде) заминяло

'I'll have left'  
'you'll have left'  
'he'll have left'  
'she'll have left'  
'it'll have left'

##### Plural

1р. ние ще сме (бъдем) заминяли  
2р. вие ще сте (бъдете) заминяли  
3р. те ще са (бъдат) заминяли

'we'll have left'  
'you'll have left'  
'they'll have left'

##### Negative Statements:

###### Singular

1р. аз няма да съм (бъда) заспал/а/о

'I'll not have gone to sleep'  
'I won't have gone to sleep'

2р. ти няма да си (бъдеш) заспял/а/о

'you'll not have gone to sleep'  
'he'll not have gone to sleep'

3р. той няма да е (бъде) заспял

'she'll not have gone to sleep'  
'it'll not have gone to sleep'

то няма да е (бъде) заспяло

1р. ние няма да сме (бъдем) заспали

'we'll not have gone to sleep'

2р. вие няма да сте (бъдете) заспали

'you'll have not gone to sleep'

3р. те няма да са (бъдат) заспали

'they'll not have gone to sleep'

##### Word Order

The short forms of the personal pronouns and the reflexive particles *ce*, *cu* are placed between the Auxiliary verb *съм/бъда* and the Participle.

След една седмица ти ще си  
се подгответил добре за из-  
питите.

'In a week's time you'll have  
prepared well for the exams.'

Ще си получила телеграмата  
ми и ще си *ми* отговорила  
мнogo преди това писмо  
да стигне до теб.

'You will have got my telegram  
and I will have received your  
answer long before this letter  
reaches you.'

Дотогава ще съм *ce* запоз-  
нал с всички колеги от отдела.

'I will have met all the staff  
at the department by then.'

Note the exception: In the third person singular they stand between  
*ще* and the forms of the Auxiliary verb *съм/бъда*:

Дали ще *го* е забравила до-  
тогава?

'I wonder if she will have  
forgotten him by then.'

Няма ли да *ce* е счупило?

'Won't it have broken?'

The Interrogative particle *ли* is placed after the Active Past  
Participle of the verb:

Ще си забравил *ли*?

'Will you have forgotten?'

### Use:

The Future Perfect Tense indicates that the action it denotes precedes some point of the time in the future. The action usually both begins and ends before a definite moment of the time in the future.

Надявам се, че ще си научил добре български, когато дойда пак.

До края на тази година ще съм преподавал двадесет години в това училище.

Обади ми се към осем часа. Дотогава ще съм преведла статията ти.

Когато си дойдеш пак след две години, ще си завършил образованието си.

'I hope your Bulgarian will have improved when I come again.'

'By the end of this year I will have been teaching for twenty years at this school.'

'Call me at about eight o'clock. I will have translated your paper by then.'

'When you come back again in two year's time you will have graduated.'

### Bulgarian

### English

Future Perfect  
Tense

Future Perfect Tense  
Future Perfect  
Continuous

### 3.9. The Future Perfect in the Past Tense

#### Бъдеще предварително време в миналото

##### Formation:

The Future Perfect in the Past Tense is formed by the Future in the Past form of the Auxiliary verb *съм* 'to be' plus the Active Past Participle of the main verb.

##### Positive Statements:

###### Singular

1р. аз щях да съм (бъда) заминал/а/о  
2р. ти щеши да си (бъдеш) заминал/а/о  
3р. той щеши да е (бъде) заминал  
тя щеши да е (бъде) заминала  
то щеши да е (бъде) заминало

'I would have left'  
'you would have left'  
'he would have left'  
'she would have left'  
'it would have left'

### Plural

1р. ние щяхме да сме (бъдем) заминали  
2р. вие щяхте да сте (бъдете) заминали  
3р. те щяха да са (бъдат) заминали

'we would have left'  
'you would have left'  
'they would have left'

### Negative statements:

###### Singular

1р. аз нямаше да съм (бъда) заспал/а/о  
2р. ти нямаше да си (бъдеш) заспал/а/о  
3р. той нямаше да е (бъде) заспал  
тя нямаше да е (бъде) заспала  
то нямаше да е (бъде) заспала  
'he wouldn't have gone to sleep'  
'she wouldn't have gone to sleep'  
'it wouldn't have gone to sleep'

### Plural

1р. ние нямаше да сме (бъдем) заспали  
2р. вие нямаше да сте (бъдете) заспали  
3р. те нямаше да са (бъдат) заспали  
'we wouldn't have gone to sleep'  
'you wouldn't have gone to sleep'  
'they wouldn't have gone to sleep'

### Word Order:

The word order rules are the same as for the Future Perfect Tense - the short forms of the personal pronouns (*ме, те, го, я, ни, ви, ги; ми, ту, му, ѝ, ни, ви, им*) and the reflexive particles *се, си* are placed between the Auxiliary verb and the Participle, with the exception of the third person singular forms:

Ти щеши да си *се* подготвил  
добре за изпитите, ако не  
ѝ/1 беши върнал книгата.  
Дотогава щяха да съм *се* запознал с всички колеги от  
отделя.

'You would have prepared well  
for the exams if you had not  
returned the book to her.'  
'I would have met all the col-  
leagues from the department  
by then.'



бèден худòжник.

Картините бòлха подбрàни  
от худòжествените излòжби  
сàмо през един сезон.

The Passive Past participle is derived by adding the suffix *-n* to the Aorist Past stem of the verb:

написах  
държàх

'I wrote'  
'I held'

написан, -а, -о, -и 'written'  
държàн, -а, -о, -и 'held'

Verbs with Aorist Past stem ending in *-ox*, *-ux* (from the First and Second Conjugation) form the Passive Past Participle with the suffix *-en*:

донèсох  
изчистих

'I brought'  
'I cleaned'

донèсен, -а, -о, -и 'brought'  
изчищен, -а, -о, -и 'cleaned'

Some verbs of the First Conjugation with stems ending in *-na* or *-u* form the Passive Past Participle with the suffix *-m*:

вдигнах  
бих

'I lifted'  
'I beat'

вдигнат, -а, -о, -и 'lifted'  
бит, бýта, -о, -и 'beaten'

Passive Past Participles change in gender and number in the same way as adjectives. They take the gender and number of the grammatical Subject of the sentence.

Изпрàтен е сигнал.

'A signal has been sent.'

Изпрàтена е телегàма.

'A telegram has been sent.'

Изпрàтено е съобщèние.

'A message has been sent.'

Изпрàтени са двàма дùши.

'Two persons have been sent.'

In Russian this kind of passive is formed with the auxiliary verb *быть* in the past or future tense plus the short passive participle of perfective aspect verbs (also changing in gender and number):

Экзàмен был сдан студèнтом. 'The exam was taken by the student.'  
Экзàмены бùдут сданы студèнтами. 'The exams will be taken by the students.'

Use:

Both types of passive constructions have forms for all the tenses. Their usage, however, is closely related to their meaning.

a) The passive constructions with the reflexive pronoun bring into perspective the duration of the action. They are more frequently used with the Present and the Imperfect Past tenses.

Селàта не сè виждàт оттук. 'The villages cannot be seen from here.'

Гласът му се чùва ясно.

Такàва вùлна се продàваше  
сàмо в голèмите градовè.

Трàбва да се издири и уста-  
новì дали има съучàстни-  
ци.

b) The passive constructions formed with the verb *съм* 'to be' and the Passive Past Participle bring into perspective the result of the action:

Тя бèше облèчена с жùлта  
рòкля без рькàви.

Той бèше победèн без ни  
нàй-мàлка съпротìва.

Акò престьпниците не прà-  
веха грèшки, то и престьп-  
лèнията им нàкога не бùха  
били разкрìвани, нали?

In certain cases some reflexive verbs are used as passives. These passive constructions usually denote prohibition or permission:

Тук не сè пùши.

'No smoking here.'

Не сè прикаzва такà.

'One shouldn't say such things.'

В сградата се влýза с  
с прòпуск.

'One needs a permit to enter the  
building.'

The Passive Voice is used less frequently in Bulgarian than in English.

English passive sentences like 'The student was given the book' are more common than 'The book was given to the student.' In Bulgarian the first type of sentences don't exist. The only way to say that in Bulgarian is: Книгата бèше дàдена на студèнта.

## 5. MOOD OF THE VERB НАКЛОНЕНИЕ НА ГЛАГОЛА

Mood is a grammatical category of the verb expressing modality. Central for its meaning is the attitude of the speaker towards the content of the message. In Bulgarian it is expressed morphologically by the form of the verbs.

The verbs in Bulgarian have four Moods:

1. Indicative Mood (Извàително наклонение)



Singular	Plural
пиша	недèй писа
чета	недèй чèте
вълнùвам се	недèй се вълнùва

c) Another way to form Negative Imperative is by means of the Auxiliary verb *недèй/недèйте* plus *да* plus the present tense forms of the main verb (of Imperfective aspect again).

Singular	Plural
излìзам	недèй да излìзаш
вàрвам	недей да вàрваш
повтàрям	недèй да повтàряш

#### Stress:

a) Verbs which form Imperatives with the ending *-u* [i] for the singular, get the stress on the *-u* [i]-syllable and the verbs, which form the Imperative with the ending *-u* [j] preserve the stress on the verbal stem:

да изберà *изберù* 'choose'  
да поръчам *поръчай* 'order'

b) In the plural Imperative forms the verbs with the ending *-eme* [ete] have the stress on the prefinal syllable and in those ending in *-ime* [ite] the stress remains on the verbal stem:

изберèте 'choose'  
поръчайтe 'order'

The forms of the imperative mood in Russian are quite similar:  
пиши, пишите 'write', не пиши, не пишите 'don't write'  
читай, читайтe 'read' не читай, не читайтe 'don't read'

It is a rule in Russian, too, to form the negative of the imperative from imperfective verbs. However, in contrast to Bulgarian, there are exceptions to this rule in cases when the speaker considers the action not desirable:

Смотрì, не упадì! 'Be careful', don't fall down!'

## B. Complex Forms of the Imperative Mood

Complex Imperatives are formed from the particles *нèка да*, *нèка, да* and *хàтде да* plus the present tense forms of the verbs:

Singular
1p. нèка да мълчà
2p. нèка да мълчиш

3p. нèка да мълчи	
	Plural
1p. нèка да мълчим	'let us be silent'
2p. нèка да мълчите	'you'd better be silent'
3p. нèка да мълчат	'let them be silent'

#### Examples:

Нèка кàжа.  
Нèка кàже.  
Да повтòрим.  
Хàйде да влèзем.

'Let me tell.'  
'Let him tell.'  
'Let us repeat.'  
'Let us go in.'

Negatives are formed by placing the particle *не* in front of the verb of Imperfective aspect:

Нèка да не мълчим. 'Let us not be silent.'  
Хàйде да не повтàряме. 'Let us not repeat.'

In the negative forms the reflexive pronouns *се*, *си* stand between the negative particle *не* and the verb:

Нèка да не сù отиваме Ѳще. 'Let us not leave yet.'  
Нèка да не сè смущàват. 'They needn't be embarrassed.'

In Russian complex forms of the imperative are formed with *даваѝ*, *даваѝте* plus the infinitive of the imperfective verbs (Даваѝте играть в футбòл! 'Let us play football!') or plus the future of the perfective verbs (Даваѝ пойдём в кино! 'Let's go to the cinema!') or when the permission/command refers to a third person - *пусть* plus present or future tense of the verb (Пусть Кàтя откроет окнò! 'Let Kate open the window!')

#### Use:

Imperative sentences are often used without a Subject - the Subject is implied. This is the person (or persons) that the order or request is addressed to.

Спрì радиото, акò обѝчаш. 'Turn off the radio, please.'  
Не сè навèждай навèн! 'Don't lean out of the window.'  
Не сè обѝждайте. 'Don't take offence.'

When used in positive imperative sentences some verbs of the Imperfective aspect may sound less polite than verbs of the Perfective aspect. They also convey urgency and repetition:  
Слез на трèтата спíрка. 'You should get off at the

Веднàга слѝзайте от  
колàта!

Мàхай се оттùк!

Вѝнаги ми кàзвайте юсти-  
ната.

The simple Imperative forms are only used in the second person singular and plural. The complex Imperative forms usually occur in the first and third person singular and plural.

Не сè приближàвай!

Опѝтайте се да ми го обяс-  
ните.

Нèка да се опѝтаме да за-  
брàвим за слùчилото се.

Нèка да не сè отклонàвам.

Нèка Пèтја да ми се обàди  
довèчера.

third stop.'

'Get out of the car immedi-  
ately!'

'Get away from here!'

'You must always tell me the  
truth.'

'Don't come nearer.'

'Try and explain it to me,  
please.'

'Let's try and forget what has  
happened.'

'Let me not digress.'

'Tell Petya to give me a ring  
tonight.'

### 5.3. The Conditional Mood

#### Условно наклонение

##### Formation:

The Bulgarian Conditional Mood consists of the special Aorist forms of the Auxiliary verb *сàм* plus the Active Aorist Past Participle, ending in *-a*.

##### Positive Forms:

###### Singular

1р. аз бих желàл/a/o

2р. ти би желàл/a/o

3р. той би желàл

тя би желàла

то би желàло

###### Plural

1р. нѝе бѝхме желàли

2р. вѝе бѝхте желàли

3р. те бѝха желàли

'I would like'

'you would like'

'he would like'

'she would like'

'it would like'

'we would like'

'you would like'

'they would like'

##### Negative forms:

###### Singular

1р. аз не бѝх се учùдил/a/o

2р. ти не бѝ се учùдил/a/o

3р. той не бѝ се учùдил

тя не бѝ се учùдила

то не бѝ се учùдило

###### Plural

1р. нѝе не бѝхме се учùдили

2р. вѝе не бѝхте се учùдили

3р. те не бѝха се учùдили

'I wouldn't be surprised'

'you wouldn't be surprised'

'he wouldn't be surprised'

'she wouldn't be surprised'

'it wouldn't be surprised'

##### Word Order:

The forms of the Auxiliary verb are usually placed before the Participle:

*Бих си кùпила* картàната,  
акò се продàва.

'I'd like to buy the picture  
if it's for sale.'

The short forms of the personal pronouns *мe, me, гo, я, нi, вi,*  
*ги; мi, тi, му, ѹ, нi, вi, им*, the reflexive pronouns *ce, cu* and the  
question-forming particle *li* are placed between the forms of the Auxiliary  
verb and the Participle:

Те бѝха *ни сe* разсърдили,  
акò не гѝ покàним.

'They'd be angry with us if we  
didn't invite them.'

Бѝхте *ли мi* простѝли?

'Could you forgive me?'

In Russian conditional mood is formed with the particle *бы*  
(which can be placed before or after the verb) and the past tense form of  
the verb:

Мы пошлѝ бы в театр, ёсли  
бы я достàл билеты.

'We would have gone to the  
theatre if I had got tickets.'

##### Use:

Conditional forms are frequently used in conditional sentences and  
express unreal or hypothetical actions, states or events, which may take  
place if certain conditions are satisfied. The action or state may be  
considered by the speaker as desired, necessary, possible, imaginary or  
non-factual. The two Clauses in a conditional sentence are logically  
connected in a causal relationship and the place of the *ако*-clause 'if-  
clause' may vary. The *ако*-clause may refer to future or to past actions

and the verbs which occur in the *ако*-clause are in the Present, the Imperfect Past and in the Past Perfect tenses.

In contrast to English, there are no tense distinctions in the non-factual conditional clauses, which may refer to the future or to the past.

#### Examples:

Ако ѝмах врёме, довечера  
бих дошъл с вас.  
(future time reference)  
Ако ме бяхте поканили,  
бих дошъл. (= щях да дойда)  
*Не бих се тревожил* толкова,  
ако бях на въше място.  
Ако можех да я видя, всичко  
би било наред.  
Ако зависеше от мен, не  
бих им разрешила да ползват  
телефона.

Conditional forms may be used in non-conditional sentences with modal meaning (similar to the Subjunctive Mood in English):

Бих искал лятото да дойде  
по-скоро.

Не бих се съгласила с вас.

Conditional forms are sometimes used to express polite requests, mild orders or wishes:

Бихте ли превели това изречение?

Бих ли ми устроила с речника си?

Бихме предпочели да не идвате с вас.

Бих трябвало да сте се досега.

In Russian these forms are used colloquially when advising or requesting more politely:

Лучше бы почитал книгу.

'If I had time, I would come with you tonight.'  
'If you had invited me, I would have come.'  
'I wouldn't worry too much, if I were you.'  
'If only I could see her, everything would be all right.'  
'If I had a say in the matter, I wouldn't allow them to use the phone.'

'I wish summer would come sooner.'

'I wouldn't agree with you.'

'Would you translate this sentence, please.'

'May I have your dictionary for a while?'

'We would rather not join you.'

'You should have guessed by now.'

'You had better read a book.'

#### 5.4. The Renarrated Mood

##### *Приказно наклонение*

The Bulgarian language has special verb forms which mark morphologically the fact that the speaker has not personally witnessed the events he/she is telling about. Through the forms of the Renarrated Mood the speaker is distancing himself/herself from the events. The information related to the speaker's message is second-hand and the Renarrated forms often indicate that the speaker is uncertain and even doubts the truthfulness of the related events. (Other terms for this specific mood are - non-testimonial, indirect, etc.)

##### Formation:

The forms of the Renarrated Mood consist of the Present Tense forms of the Auxiliary verb *съм* plus the Active Aorist Past Participle or the Active Imperfect Past Participle.

All the forms of the Indicative Mood have counterparts in the Renarrated Mood. The most frequently used tenses in the Renarrated Mood are: the Aorist Past, the Imperfect Past and the Future tenses.

The Auxiliary verb forms in the third person singular and plural (*е*, *са*) are omitted in the Renarrated forms.

The Renarrated forms for the Present and the Imperfect past tenses are the same:

##### Indicative forms

##### Present Tense forms

##### Renarrated forms

##### Singular

1p. аз пъша	'write or	пъшел/а съм
2p. ти пъшеш	am/are/is	пъшел/а си
3p. той пъшее	writing'	пъшел
тя пъшее		пъшила
то пъшее		пъшило

##### Plural

1p. ние пъшем		пъшили съм
2p. вие пъшете		пъшили сте
3p. те пъшат		пъшили

##### Imperfect Past tense forms

##### Singular

1p. пъшех	'was/were	пъшел/а съм
-----------	-----------	-------------

##### Renarrated forms

2р. пѝшеше	writing'	пѝшел/а си пѝшел/а/o
3р. пѝшеше		
<b>Plural</b>		
1р. пѝшехме	'were writing'	пѝшели сме пѝшели сте пѝшели
2р. пѝшехте		
3р. пѝшеха		

  

<b>Aorist Past tense forms</b>		
<b>Singular</b>		<b>Renarrated forms</b>
1р. пѝсах	'wrote'	пѝсал/а съм пѝсал/а си пѝсал/а/o
2р. пѝса		
3р. пѝса		
<b>Plural</b>		
1р. пѝсахме		пѝсали сме
2р. пѝсахте		пѝсали сте
3р. пѝсаха		пѝсали

The renarrated forms for the Perfect and Past Perfect tenses are the same:

<b>Perfect Tense forms</b>		
<b>Singular</b>		<b>Renarrated forms</b>
1р. пѝсал/а съм	'have/has written'	бил/а съм пѝсал/а бил/а си пѝсал/а бил/а/o пѝсал/а/o
2р. пѝсал/а си		
3р. пѝсал/а/o е		
<b>Plural</b>		
1р. пѝсали сме	'have written'	били сме пѝсали
2р. пѝсали сте		били сте пѝсали
3р. пѝсали са		били пѝсали

<b>Past Perfect Tense forms</b>		
<b>Singular</b>		<b>Renarrated forms</b>
1р. бях пѝсал/а	'had written'	бил/а съм пѝсал/а бил/а си пѝсал/а бил/а/o пѝсал/а/o
2р. беши пѝсал/а		
3р. беши пѝсал/а/o		
<b>Plural</b>		
1р. бяхме пѝсали		били сме пѝсали

2р. бяхте пѝсали		били сте пѝсали
3р. бяха пѝсали		били пѝсали

The Renarrated forms for the Future and the Future in the Past tenses are the same:

<b>Future Tense forms</b>	<b>Renarrated forms</b>
<b>Singular</b>	
1р. ще пѝша	'will write'
2р. ще пѝшеш	
3р. ще пѝше	
<b>Plural</b>	
1р. ще пѝшем	
2р. ще пѝшете	
3р. ще пѝшат	
<b>Future in the Past Tense</b>	<b>Renarrated forms</b>
<b>Singular</b>	
1р. щях да пѝша	'would write'
2р. щеши да пѝшеш	
3р. щеши да пѝше	
<b>Plural</b>	
1р. щяхме да пѝшем	
2р. щахте да пѝшете	
3р. щяха да пѝшат	
The Renarrated forms for the Future Perfect and the Future Perfect in the Past tenses are the same:	
<b>Indicative forms</b>	<b>Renarrated forms</b>
<b>Future Perfect Tense forms</b>	
<b>Singular</b>	
1р. ще съм пѝсал/а	'will have written'
2р. ще си пѝсал/а	
3р. ще е пѝсал/а/o	
<b>Plural</b>	
1р. ще сме пѝсали	
2р. ще сте пѝсали	
3р. ще са пѝсали	

## Future Perfect in the Past

1p. щях да съм писал/а

2p. щеше да си писал/а

3p. щеше да е писал/а/о

1p. щяхме да сме писали

2p. щахте да сте писали

3p. щаха да са писали

The Negative of the renarrated present and past tenses is formed by placing the particle *не* before the Auxiliary verb *съм* and for the third person singular and plural - before the Participle:

Разбрàх, че снòщи не сù се  
върнал наврèме.

Той не отишòл наврèме.

## Renarrated forms

### Singular

'would' щàл/а съм да съм писал/  
have щàл/а си да си писал/а  
written' щàл/а/о да е писал/а/о

### Plural

щèли сме да сме писали  
щèли сте да сте писали  
щèли да са писали

The Negative of the renarrated future tenses is formed by substituting *нàма да* from the Indicative Future Tense with *нàмало да* plus the main verb:

Вárно ли е, че нàмало да  
заминаш за чужбина?

'Is it true that you are not  
going abroad?'

### Use:

While the Indicative Mood forms indicate that the speaker believes the information he/she relates to be factual and objective, the Renarrated Mood forms indicate that the speaker has not witnessed the event and may express various degrees of subjectivity towards the information.

### Indicative Mood

Когàто тя се обърна, той  
си бèше тръгнал.

### Renarrated Mood

Когàто тя се обърнала, той  
си бил тръгнал.

### Examples:

Чух, че писмòто присигнало  
с голàмо закъснèние.

Чух, че пак те болàл кра-  
кът.

Акò знаех, че товà про-  
клèто сèло билò тòлкова  
далèче, нàмаше да тръгвам.  
Охо, че ти си говорела много  
добрè бùлгарски!

Чух, че Бòби се развèждал.

Всìчки кàзват, че на нèя  
не мòжело да се разчýта.

Чùхте ли, че нàмало да се  
открìва излòжбата?

- Как е болният? - Токù-що  
сестратà ми кàза, че вèче  
стàвал и се разхòждал.

Бил замìнал уж, за да ги  
търси.

Бил съм го излìгнал!

На товà мàсто, кàкто се  
докàзва от разкòпките, се  
намìрало стàро тракийско  
сèлище.

Тràките притежàвали висò-  
ка материàлна култùра. Те  
умèели да израбòтват пре-  
kràсни украшèния.

The forms of the Renarrated Mood are the verb forms of fairy-tales and folk-stories as well as in historical texts about ancient times.

*Имало* еднò врèме еднò мо-  
миче. То се кàзвало Снежàн-  
ка, защòто билò бùло като  
сняг.

'I hear you have pains in your  
leg again.'

'If I had known the blasted  
village was so far I wouldn't  
have started.'

'Well, isn't this rather a  
pleasant surprise. Your Bulga-  
rian seems to be very fluent.'

'I heard that Bob was getting  
a divorce.'

'She is said to be quite  
unreliable.'

'Have you heard that the exhi-  
bition is not going to be opened?'

'How is the patient feeling?

The nurse has just told me

that he can already get out of

bed and walk.'

'Reportedly, he had gone away  
to look for them (but I rather doubt it).'

'He claims I have cheated on  
him (but that's not true).'

'Excavations show that there  
had been an ancient Thracian  
settlement on this site.'

'The Thracians had highly  
developed material culture.  
They were skilled in manu-  
facturing exquisite jewelry  
and ornaments.'

'Once upon a time there was a  
girl. Her name was Snow-white,  
because she was as white as  
snow.'

Прàбългарите живеeli  
в Азия.

'The old Bulgarians lived  
in Aisa.

As can be seen in the examples, the Bulgarian renarrated mood can be translated into English with the help of some lexical means such as - 'people say', 'they say' 'I have been told that', etc., as well as with words or phrases expressing doubt in the truthfulness of the actions.

## 6. NON-FINITE VERB FORMS

### НЕЛИЧНИ ГЛАГОЛНИ ФОРМИ

The non-finite verb forms (or verbals) in Bulgarian are:

#### 1. The Participles:

- the Active Present Participle (сегашно деятелно причастие),
- the Active Imperfect Past Participle (минало несвършено деятелно причастие),
- the Active Aorist Past Participle (минало свършено деятелно причастие),
- the Passive Past Participle (минало страдателно причастие).

#### 2. The Verbal Adverb (деепричастие)

#### 3. The Verbal Noun (отглаголно съществително)

#### 4. The Infinitive (инфинитив)

The non-finite verb forms do not differ from the finite verb forms in their lexical meaning. However, in terms of syntactic function in the sentence, they behave either like verbs, or like nouns, adjectives, adverbs, etc. They have some verbal and some non-verbal features.

### 6.1. PARTICIPLES

#### ПРИЧАСТИЯ

##### A. The Active Present Participle

##### Сегашно деятелно причастие

##### Formation:

The Active Present Participle is formed from the first person singular of the Present Tense forms of the verbs, by adding the suffixes - *ен*, - *ящ*, - *ащ*. This Participle is derived only from verbs of the Imperfective Aspect.

The suffixes -*ящ*/-*ащ* (after ž, č, š) derive Participles from verbs of the first and second conjugation.

When the stress in the Present form is not on the final syllable the suffix is - *ен*.

Verbs of the third conjugation form the Participles by adding the suffix -*ищ*.

#### Present Tense forms

#### 1p. singular

чета	'read'	четяш	'reading'
блестя	'shine'	блестяш	'shining'
държà	'hold'	държаш	'holding'
живея	'live'	живеещ	'living'
говоря	'speak'	говорещ	'speaking'
глèдам	'watch'	глèдаш	'watching'

The consonants [k] and [g] change into [č] and [ž].

тека	'flow'	текащ	'flowing'
мòга	'be able'	мòжещ	'capable'

The corresponding participle in Russian is quite similar and also changes in gender and number:

	Russian	Bulgarian	English
masc.	читающий	четяш	'reading'
fem.	читающая	четяща	
neut.	читающее	четяшо	
pl.	читающие	четящи	

But in Russian the Present Participles don't add definite articles.

#### Use:

The Active Present Participles usually function as Attributes in noun phrases. They behave like adjectives: they change in gender and number and take articles in the same way as adjectives. They agree in gender and number with the noun in front of which they stand:

По пòда юмаше хлебàрки и  
други пълзящи насекòми.

'There were cockroaches and  
other crawling insects on the floor.'

Мълчàщата жèна изглèждаше  
нèрвна.

'The silent woman seemed to be  
nervous.'

Уплàшихте ли се от лаèущите  
кùчета?

'Were you scared of the bark-  
ing dogs?'

The Active Present Participles may be substantivized and may function as nouns:

**Участващи** да се приготвят 'The participants should  
за старта. get ready for the start.'

The Active Present Participles are sometimes used in particular phrases, which function in relative clauses:

Полùчихте ли информаèия 'Have you got information  
за всìчки влàкове, **присти-  
гащи** след дванàдесет часà?' about all the trains arriving  
(The opposite will be **заминаèващи**). after 12.00?'

Харèса ли ти артиста, **из-  
пълниèващ** рòлята на Хàмлет? 'Did you like the actor  
Уважàвам хòрата, **говореци** playing Hamlet?'

нàколко езàка. 'I respect people who speak  
several foreign languages.'

Some Active Present Participles also occur as constituents of compound nouns or collocations:

пàшеща машàна	'typewriter'
гàрмàща змий	'rattlesnake'
мàеща мèчка	'raccoon, coon'
входàща информаèия	'input information'
смекчàващи (винàта)	'mitigating circumstances'
обстóйтелства	
лежàщо положèние	'recumbent position'
говòрещ фìлм	'talking film (talkie)'
кьрвàща рàна	'raw wound', etc.

## B. The Active Imperfect Past Participle

*Минало несвàршено деятелно причастие*

**Formation:**

The Active Imperfect Past Participles are derived from the first person singular of the Imperfective or Perfective verbs in the Past Imperfective Tense, by adding the suffix **-л**. They change in gender and number.

The stress remains the same as in the Imperfect Past forms:

**Imperfect Past Tense      Active Imperfect Past Participle**

1p. singular

четéх

четéял, -а, -о, -и

'read'

игрàех	игрàел, -а, -о, -и	'played'
живèех	живèел, -а, -о, -и	'lived'
лежàх	лежàл, -а, -о, -и	'lain'
вàрвàх	вàрвàл, -а, -о, -и	'walked'
тùрпàх	тùрпàл, -а, -о, -и	'endured'

In the Russian language there are no corresponding verb forms.

**Use:**

The Active Imperfect Past Participles are not used independently or as attributes in a sentence. They are only constituents of the compound renarrated forms of the Present and Imperfect Past tenses:

Кàзват, че всяка сùтрин 'They say he goes for a swim  
хòдел да плùва.' every morning.'

Тя мì кàза, че чèсто мìс- 'She told me she had often  
лела за мен, но не смèела да thought about me but she  
ми се обàди.' hadn't dared to call me.'

## C. The Active Aorist Past Participle

*Минало свàршено деятелно причастие*

**Formation:**

Active Aorist Past Participles are derived from the first person singular form of the Aorist Past tense verbs, by adding the suffix **-л**. These verbs can be of either Perfective or Imperfective Aspect. They change in gender and number, and take articles in the same way as adjectives.

### Aorist Past Tense

1p. singular

усèтих	усèтил, -а, -о, -и	'felt'
напàсах	напàсал, -а, -о, -и	'written'
глèдах	глèдал, -а, -о, -и	'seen'
узрях	узрял, -а, -о, -и	'ripened'
взéх	взèл, -а, -о, -и	'taken'
чùх	чùл, -а, -о, -и	'heard'

Some sound changes occur when Participles are derived from verbs ending in **-ox**: The sound [ə] is omitted in the feminine, neuter and plural participles:

Aorist forms	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plural	
чётох	чел	чёла	чёло	чёли	'read'
излязок	излязъл	излязла	излязло	излèзли	'gone out'
рèкох	рèкъл	рèкла	рèкло	рèкли	'said'
<b>Irregular forms</b>					
бях	бил	била	било	били	'been'
дойдòх	дошъл	дошлà	дошлò	дошлì	'come'
отидох	отишъл	отишлà	отишлò	отишлì	'gone'
можàх	могъл	моглà	моглò	моглì	'was/were'
	можàл	можàла	можàло	можàли	'able to'

In Russian the corresponding forms are not considered participles but Past tense of the verbs (прошедшее время):

читàл, читàла, читàло, читàли	'read'
был, была, было, былì	'was, were'
пришёл, пришлà, пришлò, пришлì	'came'

#### Use:

Active Aorist Past Participles are widely used in compound tense forms in the Indicative, Conditional and Renarrated moods.

#### Perfect Tense

Той не е *дошъл* дъще.

'He hasn't come yet.'

Нали не си *изгùбила* билета?

'You haven't lost the ticket, have you?'

Мìсля, че черèшите са *урèли*.

'I believe the cherries are ripe.'

#### Past Perfect Tense

Не бèше съвсèм непознàт - бях го срèштал веднàж преди товà.

'He wasn't exactly a stranger. I had met him once before.'

#### Future Perfect Tense

Надàвам се, че ще си *научил* добрè бùлгарски, когàто дойда пак.

'I hope your Bulgarian will have improved by the time I come again.'

#### Future Perfect in the Past

Нàмаше да се е *счùпило*, акò го бàхме взèли в ръч-

'It wouldn't have broken, if we had carried it as hand

ния багàж.

#### Conditional Mood

Бих *купила* картìната, акò се продàва.

Бàхте ли *превèли* товà изречèние.

baggage.'

'I'd like to buy the picture, if it's for sale.'

'Would you translate this sentence, please.'

#### Renarrated forms

Aorist Past Tense - хòдил/а съм, ходил, -а, -о, -и

Казват, че докатò рабòтел в Япония, хòдил и в Китàй.

'They say that while working in Japan he went to China, too.'

#### Perfect and Past Perfect Tenses:

бил съм хòдил, -а, той бил хòдил, тя билà хòдила, то билò хòдило Future Perfect and Future Perfect in the Past tenses - щàл/а съм да съм хòдил/а, щàл/а/о да е хòдил/а/о

When used attributively The Active Aorist Past Participle behaves as an adjective and agrees in gender and number with the noun, in front of which it stands:

*Пàдналата* мъглà бèше причина за задръстването.

Имаше ли ранèни в *катас-трофиèралия* влак?

'The fallen fog had caused the traffic jam.'

'Were there any people injured in the train crash?'

Active Aorist Past Participles may be substantivized and used as nouns:

*Мìналото* лèсно се забràвя.

'The past is easily forgotten.'

За *новодошлите* живòтът в големия град е твàрде необичаен.

'Life in the big cities is rather strange for newcomers.'

The Active Aorist Past Participles are sometimes used in participial phrases which substitute relative clauses:

Студèнти, *взèли* книги от библиотèката, трàбва да ги вàрнат преди кràя на сèместъра.

'Students who have borrowed books from the library must return them before the end of the semester.'

#### D. The Passive Past Participle

##### *Мìнало страдателно причастие*

The Passive Past Participles are derived from the Aorist Past Tense of the first person singular forms by means of the suffixes *-н*, *-ен*, *-м*.

They change in gender and number and take articles in the same way as adjectives.

### Aorist Past tense      Passive Past Participle

#### 1p. singular      suffix **-n**

ядосах	ядосан, -а, -о, -и	'angry/angered'
разкàзах	разкàзан, -а, -о, -и	'told'
написах	написан, -а, -о, -и	'written'
видях	видян, -а, -о, -и	'seen'
глèдах	глèдан, -а, -о, -и	'looked after'
държàх	държàн, -а, -о, -и	'held'

#### suffix **-en**

чèтох	чèтен, -а, -о, -и	'read'
донèсох	донèсен, -а, -о, -и	'brought'
гòтвих	гòтвен, -а, -о, -и	'cooked'

#### suffix **-m**

вдìгнах	вдìгнат, -а, -о, -и	'lifted'
обръснах	обръснат, -а, -о, -и	'shaved/shaven'
познàх	познàт, -а, -о, -и	'known'
мих	мит, -а, -о, -и	'washed'
чух	чут, -а, -о, -и	'heard'
вzèх	взет, -а, -о, -и	'taken'
изпàх	изпàт, -а, -о, -и	'sung'
върнах	върнат, -а, -о, -и	'given back'
срèщнах	срèщнат, -а, -о, -и	'met'

There is a practical rule how to distinguish which verbs form the Participle with suffix **-m** - those that already have suffix **-na-** in their Perfective Aspect form as in да срèщна 'to meet', да вдìгна 'to lift', and, of course, also the Perfective Aspect verbs, derived from them - да измìя, да изпàя, да зашìя, да набìя, and a group of short verbs as мìя 'to wash', пìя 'to drink', шìя 'to sew', бìя 'to beat'.

Some verbs have double forms of The Passive Past Participle. The forms ending in **-m** are more often used.

нагрìх	нагрìт, -а, -о, -и/нагрìн, -а, -о, -и	'heated'
изпàх	изпàт, -а, -о, -и/изпàн, -а, -о, -и	'sung'

Passive Past Participles are derived mainly from transitive verbs.

There are a few exceptions, such as:

усмìхнах се	усмìхнат, -а, -о, -и	'smiling'
-------------	----------------------	-----------

заглèдах се      заглèдан, -а, -о, -и      'with a gazing look'  
Exceptions are Passive Past Participle formed from imperfective verbs:

По тревàта е хòдено.

Тук е влизано.

The Russian equivalents are formed similarly. The difference is that in Russian they are derived only from perfective aspect verbs while in Bulgarian they can be derived from both aspects.

Russian	Bulgarian	English
masc. прочитанный	прочèтен	'read' (Past Part.)
fem. прочитанная	прочèтена	
neut. прочитанное	прочèтено	
pl. прочитанные	прочèтени	
masc. взятый	взет	'taken'
fem. взятая	взèта	
neut. взятое	взèто	
pl. взятые	взèти	

#### Use:

Passive Past Participles are used in Passive Voice constructions. They combine the various tense forms of the Auxiliary verb *сèм* 'to be' plus the Participle:

Двèте му дъщерì бяха **омъжени** за официèри.

Райдонът е сìлно **охраняван**.  
Той е бил жестòко **бит и изтезаван** по врèме на рàзпита.

Всìчко във вѝлата билò **разбито**, но нàмало нѝщо **откраднато**.

'His two daughters were married to army officers.'

'The area is heavily guarded.'

'He had been severely beaten and tortured during the interrogation.'

'Reportedly, the furniture in the villa had been smashed up but nothing had been stolen.'

Passive Past Participles are also used as attributes and agree in gender and number with the noun they modify. They usually denote some activity or result of an activity, prior to the action, denoted by the main verb in a sentence.

Седях, **заслùшан** в концèрта със **затворени** очи.

'I sat listening to the concert with my eyes closed.'

**Предпiсаното** лечениe с антибиотик не се окàза ефикасно.

The Passive Past Participles may be substantivized and used as nouns:

На ранениите трябва веднàга да се окàже медицинска помощ.

Passive Past Participles are sometimes used in participial phrases similar to relative clauses:

Нанесете ўдара с юмрùк, увiт с хавлиена кърпа.

Денят, определен за сватбата, наближаваше.

'The antibiotic medication prescribed was not effective (failed to achieve the desired effect).'

'We must urgently provide medical attention to the injured.'

'Hit it with your fist wrapped in a towel.'

'The day set for the wedding was near.'

## 6.2. Verbal Adverbs

### Деепричастия

#### Formation:

Verbal Adverbs are derived from first person singular Present Tense forms by adding the suffixes: **-айки** (verbs of the third conjugation ending in **-ам**), **-ейки** (verbs of the first and second conjugation), **-йки** (verbs of the third conjugation ending in **-ям**). Only verbs of the Imperfective aspect can form Verbal Adverbs.

#### Present tense form

глèдам  
слèдвам  
четà  
мìсля  
повтàрям  
стрèлям

#### Verbal Adverbs

глèдайки	'looking'
слèдвайки	'following'
четèйки	'reading'
мìслайки	'thinking'
повтàряйки	'repeating'
стрèляйки	'shooting'

The sounds [g] and [k] from the present forms are changed into [ž] and [č]:

мòга	мòжейки	'being capable of'
текà	течèйки	'flowing'

The verbal adverbs in Russian are unchangeable, too, and derived from imperfective aspect verbs:

Он рисует, слùшая мùзыку. 'He is drawing (while)

listening to music.'

In Russian there is a verbal adverb from the perfective aspect (Написàв письмо, я накlèил màрку. 'After writing the letter I stuck the stamp'). In Bulgarian verbal adverbs from perfective aspect are never formed.

#### Use:

The activity denoted by the verbal adverb is simultaneous to that denoted by the main verb (in whatever tense form it occurs in a sentence): Колàта излèзе от платнòто, 'The car swerved off the road избýгвайки катастрòфата. avoiding the accident.'

Verbal Adverbs are not typical of the spoken everyday, colloquial language. They are used in written or formal discourse.

Пèрво, ползвайки нож, свалете пластмасовата обвýвка... 'First, using a knife, peel off the plastic cover...'

In the Negative forms the particle **не** is written separately and placed before the Verbal Adverb.

Продължìхме пътуването си, 'We continued our trip unaware не знаеики и не подозирайки and unsuspecting of any никаква опасност.'

## 6.3. Verbal Nouns

### Отглаголни съществителни

#### Formation:

There are two kinds of verbal nouns in Bulgarian. They are derived by adding the suffix **-не** or the suffix **-нue** to the first person singular past tense forms of the verbs.

a) The suffix **-не** derives verbal nouns from verbs of the Imperfective Aspect:

#### Past tense forms

пìсах  
бръснах  
хòдих  
мìслих  
вървàх  
четà

#### Verbal Nouns ending in **-не**

пìсане	'writing'
бръснене	'shaving'
хòдене	'going'
мìслене	'thinking'
вървèне	'walking'
четене	'reading'

b) The suffix **-нue** derives verbal nouns from verbs of both aspects

but perfective verbal nouns are more frequently derived with the suffix *-ние*.

**Past tense forms      Verbal Nouns with suffix *-ние***

предлòжих	предложèние	'suggestion'
отмъстòих	отмъщèние	'revenge'
закъснòих	закъснèние	'delay'
накàзах	наказàние	'punishment'
внимàвах	внимàние	'attention'

In Russian only the second type verbal nouns are formed.

Examples:

предложòти	предложèние	'1. suggestion 2. sentence'
отомстòти	отмъщèние	'revenge'
опоздàти	опоздàние	'delay'
наказàти	наказàние	'punishment'
	внимàние	'attention'

Some verbs in Bulgarian have pairs of verbal nouns derived with both the suffixes *-не* and *-ние*. They usually differ in meaning but may sometimes be synonymous:

събìране	'addition, gathering'
събрàние	'meeting'
пàдане	'drop, downfall'
падèние	'degradation, disgrace'
вìждане	'standpoint, opinion'
видèние	'apparition, vision'

But: увеличàване	
увеличèние	'increase, growth'
намалìване	
намалèние	'decrease, reduction'
разпредèляне	
разпределèние	'distribution, allocation'

Use:

Verbal Nouns express the result of an action and the result may sometimes be material. Verbal nouns with the suffix *-не* are semantically closer to verbs, while verbal nouns with the suffix *-ние* are semantically closer to nouns.

In the sentence both kinds behave like nouns - they form plurals

and take the article. Verbal Nouns are of the neuter gender and form the plural with the ending *-(и)я*.

**Обучèнието на децàта за-  
пòчва със събиране и из-  
вàждане.**

**Предложèниета бàха обсъде-**

от двèте правителства.

Ежедèнната разговòрна реч

е изпàлнена с много **повто-  
рение** и паузи.

'Children start their educa-  
tion by studying addition and  
subtraction.'

'The proposals were discussed  
by the two governments.'

'Casual everyday conversation  
tends to be filled with  
repetition and pauses.'

Verbal nouns occur more frequently in journalistic and scientific texts.

**Обновлèнието обхàща всич-  
ки сфèри на обществòто.**

Всèки трàбва да намìра  
удовлетворèние в рàботата си.

**Премахвàнето на държàвния**

монопòл ще доведè до **подо-  
брàване** на икономìческите

'The renovation includes all  
the spheres of society.'

'Everyone must find satisfa-  
ction in his work.'

'The elimination of the  
state's monopoly will result  
in the improvement of economic  
conditions.'

#### 6.4. The Infinitive

##### Инфинитив

Only some traces of the old Infinitive have remained in the Bulgarian language. It is used in Negative Imperative forms after the Auxiliary verb *недèй/недèйте* but it is often replaced by *да* constructions:

недèй *закùсва* = недèй да закùсваш      'don't have breakfast'

недèй *пиàса* = недèй да пишеш      'don't write'

In Russian the infinitives end in *-ть*, *-чь* and *-ти* (писать 'to write', закусить 'to have breakfast', мочь 'to be able to, помочь 'to help), нестí 'to carry' растí 'to grow'). The infinitive, as in English, is the dictionary form of verbs. It is conjugated and has a number of uses in the language.

## 7. VERB FORMATION

Verbs are derived from other verbs or from nouns, adjectives, adverbs, numerals, etc. by means of suffixes and prefixes.

When added to the verbs, the suffixes and/or prefixes may change the meaning or the aspect of the verb or both.

There are a number of primary verbs in Bulgarian, which may be either of the Perfective or of the Imperfective Aspect.

### Some primary verbs of the Perfective aspect

да дам	'to give'	да решà	'to decide'
да вѝдя	'to see'	да сѝпя	'to pour'
да кàжа	'to say'	да скòча	'to jump'
да глòбя	'to fine'	да спасà	'to save'
да кùпя	'to buy'	да хвòрля	'to throw'

In Russian the corresponding verbs are quite similar but not always the aspect is the same:  
дать 'to give' (also perfective), видеть 'to see' (but imperfective aspect),  
сказать (perfective) 'to say', купить (perf.) 'to buy', решать (imperf.) 'to decide'.

### Some primary verbs of the Imperfective aspect

гùбя	'to lose'	шия	'to sew'
к्रìя	'to hide'	бìя	'to beat'
мìя	'to wash'	дòвча	'to chew'
спя	'to sleep'	вòдя	'to lead'
плàча	'to cry'	сèя	'to sow, plant'

In Russian:

губить 'to lose', скрывать 'to hide', мыть 'to wash', спать 'to sleep',  
плàкать 'to cry'.

### 7.1. Derivation of Verbs of the Perfective Aspect

A. The suffix **-н-** is used to derive Perfective verbs from Imperfective ones. The verbs acquire additional semantic features and refer to single, unrepeated, diminutive action or to the beginning of the activity, denoted by the originally imperfective verb:

Imperfective	Perfective
свìря 'to play music;	да свìрна 'to give a whistle'
пèжа 'to cut'	да рèзна 'to make a cut'

чùкам	'to knock'	да чùкна	'to give a knock'
обìчам	'to love'	да обìкна	'to fall in love'
летà	'to fly'	да лìтна	'to fly off/start flying'
пìя	'to drink'	да пìйна	'to take a drink/sip'
дрèмя	'to doze'	да дрèмна	'to take a nap'

In Russian this suffix is also used to form perfective aspect verbs:  
свистèть 'to whistle' свистнуть 'to give a whistle'

B. Most often verbs of the Perfective aspect are derived from Imperfective verbs by means of prefixes. This is a very productive pattern of verb derivation in Bulgarian.

Some prefixes completely change the lexical meaning of the verb:  
Imperfective      Perfective

да <b>препìша</b>	'to copy'
да <b>подпìша</b>	'to sign'
пìша 'to write'	да <b>предпìша</b> 'to prescribe'
	да <b>надпìша</b> 'to inscribe'
	да <b>опìша</b> '/address (an envelope)' 'to describe'
	да <b>изпìша</b> 'to cover with writing'

In Russian prefixes are also widely used to change the lexical meaning as well as the aspect of verbs:

писать 'to write', переписать 'to copy', подписать 'to sign (oneself)',  
предписать 'to prescribe', описать 'to describe'.

Some prefixes modify the meaning of the verb with additional connotations:

Imperefective	Perfective
чàкам	'to wait'
четà	'to read'
да почàкам	'to wait a little'
да дочетà	'to finish reading'

There are about 18 prefixes which with a few exceptions are quite productive in the formation of verbs.

1. The prefix **в(з)-** may signify that the verbal action is directed inwards or it may mean transition into a new state.

да <b>въведà</b>	'to introduce'
да <b>вградì</b>	'to build in'
да <b>втечñì</b>	'to turn into liquid'
да се <b>вкаменì</b>	'to petrify, turn into stone'
да (се) <b>влошà</b>	'to worsen'

Бòлките му се *влошиха*.

'His pains worsened.'

In Russian the same prefix is used but not always the aspect coincides with the Bulgarian:  
входить 'to come in', but imperfective aspect, внести 'to take in, to import'

2. The prefix *въз-* may signify that the verbal action is directed upwards, reversed or that it is renewed.

да <i>въз</i> дигна	'to raise, exalt to the skies'
да <i>въз</i> ляза	'to amount to'
да (се) <i>въз</i> държà	'to restrain, hold back'
да (се) <i>въз</i> противà	'to be opposed, object to'
да <i>въз</i> обновà	'to renew, revive'
Трудно бих се <i>въз</i> държàл	'It would be hard to restrain myself from laughing out.'
да не сè разсмèя.	

In Russian this prefix is *воз-* or *вос-*:  
возбудить 'to excite, to cause', воскресить 'to resurrect'.

3. The prefix *до-* may signify that the action has been brought to a certain limit, it may signify transition into a new state or inception of desire to do something.

да <i>донесà</i>	'to bring'
да <i>дочетà</i>	'to finish reading'
да <i>доям</i>	'to finish eating'
да <i>довърша</i>	'to finish something off'
да <i>доплатì</i>	'to pay an additional sum'
да <i>добàвя</i>	'to add'
да ми се <i>доспì</i>	'to start feeling sleepy'
Трèбва да <i>доплатите</i> за попràвките.	'Additional payment is required for the repairs.'

In Russian:

доплить 'to swim to a certain point', доплатить 'to pay an additional sum'.

4. The prefix *за-* may signify the beginning of an action or state, transition into a different state, exchange and some other shades of meaning.

да <i>запèя</i>	'to start singing'
да се <i>замìся</i>	'to become thoughtful'
да <i>заспì</i>	'to fall asleep'

да *заменì*

Продавàчката откàза да *заменì* пулòвера.

In Russian:

зalàдить 'to begin repeating the same words', задùматься 'to become thoughtful'.

5. The prefix *из-* may signify outward or upward motion, the completion of an action or a complete change of state.

да <i>излìза</i>	'to go out'
да <i>изнесà</i>	'to take/carry something out'
да се <i>изкачà</i>	'to climb, go upstairs'
да <i>изпìя</i>	'to drink something off'
да <i>изгорà</i>	'to burn out/away'
Остàвихме òгъня да <i>изгорì</i> .	'We let the fire burn out.'

In Russian this prefix is *из-* or *ис-*:

извинить 'to excuse', испить 'to drink something off'.

6. The prefix *на-* may signify accumulation or denote that the object is affected by the action; it may signify satisfaction with the duration of the activity or the result of some gradual development.

да <i>натrùпам</i>	'to pile up, heap up'
да <i>начùпя</i>	'to break into pieces'
да (се) <i>наведà</i>	'to bent down'
да се <i>наспà</i>	'to get enough sleep'
да се <i>нарадвам</i>	'to be overjoyed'
да <i>напълнèя</i>	'to put on weight'
да (се) <i>напìя</i>	'to get enough of drinking, to get drunk'
Не мòжеха да се <i>нарадвам</i> ,	'They were overjoyed to see
че се е върнал.	him back.'

In Russian:

нарèзать 'to cut into pieces', напàтся 'to get enough of drinking, to get drunk'.

7. The prefix *наd-* may signify that the action is on or over something or that it surpasses or exceeds something.

да <i>наdпìша</i>	'to inscribe, write an address on an envelope'
да <i>наdвìсна</i>	'to overhang, impend'

да <i>надпревàря</i>	'to overtake, outdistance'
да <i>надпѝя</i>	'to drink more than someone'
да <i>надценѝ</i>	'to overestimate'
Бòј се да не <i>надценѝ</i>	'I'm afraid of overestimating their sense of humour.'
чùвството им за хумор.	

In Russian:

надписàть 'to inscribe, to write an address', надбавить 'to add, to give additionally'

8. The prefix *o-*(*об-*) may signify that the activity encircles a large part of an object or that some covering is removed from an object.

да <i>оградѝ</i>	'to enclose, surround'
да <i>обвѝя</i>	'to wrap up, entwine, envelop'
да <i>общѝя</i>	'to trim or border (a handkerchief)
да <i>обръсна</i>	'to shave off'
да <i>обèля</i>	'to peel off'
да <i>оголя</i>	'to strip naked, denude'
Лицèто ми изгорà и но- сът ми <i>се обèли</i> .	'My face was sunburnt and the skin of my nose has peeled off.'

In Russian:

обвенчàть 'to wed, lit. to cover with a wreath', обволòчь 'to wrap up, to cover (with clouds)'.

9. The prefix *om-* may signify movement away from something or action in response or in opposition to something.

да <i>откъсна</i>	'to tear off, pick'
да <i>отдалечà</i>	'to alienate, remove'
да <i>отделѝ</i>	'to separate, single out'
да <i>отговòря</i>	'to answer, respond'
да <i>отблъсна</i>	'to drive back, repulse'
Мòжете ли да ми <i>отде- лите</i> нàколко минути?	'Could you spare me some minutes, please.'

In Russian:

отдалить 'to alienate, to remove', отвèтить 'to answer, respond'.

10. The prefix *no-* may signify that the action is done over some surface, or that the action is done over a short period of time.

да <i>покрѝя</i>	'to cover, encase in'
да <i>позлатѝ</i>	'to gild, cover with gold'
да <i>постèля</i>	'to cover (with a carpet, bedsheets,

да <i>почетà</i>	tablecloth, flowers, etc.)'
да <i>попèя</i>	'to read for a while'
Слънцето <i>позлатѝ</i> пла- нинските върховè.	'to sing for a while'
	'The mountain tops were gilded by the sun.'

In Russian:

покрьти 'to cover', позолотить 'to gild, cover with gold'.

11. The prefix *под-* may signify an activity under something or limited action.

да <i>подпѝша</i>	'to sign (under something)'
да <i>подчинѝ</i>	'to subordinate, overpower'
да <i>подценѝ</i>	'to underestimate'
да <i>подсладѝ</i>	'to sweeten'
да <i>подхвърля</i>	'to toss, hint'
Те с готовност <i>подчи- ниха</i> интересите си на цèлите на корпораèията.	'They willingly subordinated their interests to the objectives of the corporation.'

In Russian:

подписàться 'to sign (under something)', подчинѝть 'to subordinate, overpower'.

12. The prefix *пре-* may signify passage through space, time or across some boundary or repetition of the action.

да <i>премѝна</i>	'to pass/cross over'
да <i>преживèя</i>	'to survive, experience'
да <i>прескочà</i>	'to jump over, leap across'
да (се) <i>преуморѝ</i>	'to overstrain/overwork oneself'
да <i>прерисùвам</i>	'to copy a painting, paint sth. again'
да <i>преразглèдам</i>	'to re-examine, reconsider'
да <i>пресекà</i>	'to cross'
да <i>престъпя</i>	'to step over, to go beyond what is allowed'

Трябва да *се прераз-  
глèдат* цèлите на об-  
разовàнието.

In Russian:

пресèчъ 'to cross, to cease', преступить 'to step over, to go beyond what

is allowed'.

13. The prefix *пред-* may signify location before something in space and time.

да <i>предпàзя</i>	'to protect, prevent'
да <i>предвìдя</i>	'to foresee, provide for, stipulate'
да <i>предположа</i>	'to suppose, presume'
Мòгат ли да се <i>предвìдят</i> всìчки вероятности?	'Can all the possibilities be provided for?'

In Russian:

предохранить 'to protect, prevent', предвидеть 'to foresee', but imperfective aspect, предположить 'to suppose, presume'.

14. The prefix *при-* may signify approach, additional activity or the beginning of some state.

да <i>приближà</i>	'to approach'
да <i>привлекà</i>	'to attract'
да <i>прибавя</i>	'to add'
да ми се <i>приспì</i>	'to start feeling sleepy'
да ми <i>прилошè</i>	'to start feeling unwell, feel faint'
Чùвствам, че ще ми <i>при- лошè</i> от глад.	'I'm beginning to feel faint with hunger.'

In Russian:

приблизить 'to approach', привлечь 'to attract', прибавить 'to add'.

15. The prefix *про-* may signify passage through something or the beginning of some action or state.

да <i>пробìя</i>	'to pierce through'
да <i>прозrà</i>	'to see through; understand'
да <i>пропùсна</i>	'to let through; miss'
да <i>проговоря</i>	'to utter, begin to speak; recover one's speech'
да <i>проглèдам</i>	'to begin to see; recover one's sight'
да <i>провървà</i>	'to begin to walk; learn how to walk'
Сигурèн съм, че нìкой нàма да <i>прозрè</i> каквò	'I'm certain nobody will manage to see through my schemes.'

край.

In Russian:

пробить 'to pierce through', прозреть 'to see through, understand', пропустить 'to let through, miss', проговорить 'to utter, begin to speak; to speak for long time'.

16. The prefix *раз-* may signify scattering something in various directions, bringing an activity to its end, reversing or undoing something.

да <i>разпръсна</i>	'to disperse, scatter'
да <i>разбìя</i>	'to shatter into pieces'
да <i>разхвàрля</i>	'to scatter, fling about, mess up'
да се <i>разхубавя</i>	'to grow prettier'
да <i>разцàфна</i>	'to blossom, flourish'
да <i>разваля</i>	'to spoil, contaminate, damage'
да <i>разплетà</i>	'to unknit, disentangle'
да <i>размразà</i>	'to unfreeze, thaw out'
Не очàквах, че ще <i>раз- хвàрли</i> цàлата кùхня, сàмо за да пригòтви еднò прòсто ѹднè.	'I didn't expect he would mess up the whole kitchen while cooking just a simple meal.'

In Russian this prefix may be *раз-* or *рас-*:

распространить 'to widen, disperse, tell (a lie) to everybody', разбить 'to shatter into pieces', разбрòсить 'to mess up, to scatter, fling about'.

17. The prefix *с(ъ)-* may signify the activity of joining things together or action from the top downwards.

да <i>събера</i>	'to collect, gather'
да <i>свържа</i>	'to connect, join together; make ends meet'
да се <i>сприятели</i>	'to make friends, befriend someone'
да <i>скòча</i>	'to jump, leap'
да <i>свалì</i>	'to take down, take something off'
Дъщерà ми лèсно <i>се сприя- телì</i> с нàколко деца на нèйната възраст.	'My daughter easily made friends with several children of her own age.'

In Russian:

сберечь 'to keep, prevent, save', связàть 'to connect, join together', сдружиться 'to make friends with'.

18. The prefix *у-* may signify the completion of some activity.

да уморї	'to tire someone out'
да убїя	'to kill'
да ушїя	'to finish making, sewing (a dress, suit, etc.)'
да уловї	'to catch'
да уголемї	'to enlarge, extend'
Ще ги накїжат, акò ги уло-	'They'll be punished if they
вїт да пїшат в общежїтие-	are caught smoking in the
то.	hostel.'

In Russian:

утомїть 'to tire someone out', убїть 'to kill', ушїть 'to shorten or to take in (a dress, suit, etc.) by sewing'.

## 7.2. Derivation of Imperfective Verbs

### Образуване на глаголи от несвършен вид

Imperfective Aspect verbs are derived from Perfective Aspect verbs through suffixation. The suffixes do not change the general meaning of the verb, only its aspectual meaning - thus forming pairs of verbs equal in lexical meaning and differing in grammatical meaning - in aspect. Verbs of the Imperfective Aspect denote repetitive or unfinished action. The most frequent suffixes are: **-ам**, **-їм**, **-вам**, **-ївам**, **-авам**.

#### a) The suffix **-ам**:

Some sound changes occur during the process of derivation:

Perfective Aspect	Imperfective Aspect	Sound Changes
да спїа	спїрам 0 (no vowel) - [i]	'to stop'
да умїра	умїрам	'to die'
да прочетї	прочїтам [e] - [i]	'to read'
да намїрї	намїрам	'to find'
да сїблекї	сїблїчам [k] - [č]	'to undress'
да отлїжї	отлїгам [o] - [a]	'to put off'
		[ž] - [g]
да преведї	превїждам [d] - [žd]	'translate'
да вїдї	вїждам	'to see'
да изпїтї	изпїщам [t] - [št]	'to send'
да платї	плїщам	'to pay'
да сїдї	сїдам [e] - [ja]	'to sit'
да влїза	влїзам [ja] - [i]	'to enter'
да излїза	излїзам	'to go out'

да слїза	слизам	'to get off (atram); climb down'
b) The suffix <b>-їм</b> :		
да изнесї	изнаїсям [e] - [a]	'to export'
да отговїрї	отговїрїам [o] - [a]	'to answer'
да повїтїрї	повїтїрїам	'to repeat'
да отвїрї	отвїрїам	'to open'
да затвїрї	затвїрїам	'to close'
c) The suffix <b>-вам</b> :		
да трїгна	трїгвам	'to start'
да измїя	измївам	'to wash'
да напїша	напїсвам [š] - [s]	'to write'
да кїмса	кїзвам [ž] - [z]	'to say/tell'
да накїмса	накїзвам	'to punish'
да заплїча	заплїквам [č] - [k]	'to start crying'
d) The suffix <b>-ївам</b> :		
да изпїя	изпївам	'to sing'
да пребрї	пребрївам	'to count'
да проследї	проследївам	'to follow'
e) The suffix <b>-авам</b> :		
да решї	решївам	'to decide, solve'
да полїча	получївам	'to receive'
да победї	побежїдївам [d] - [žd]	'to win'
да наградї	награжїдївам	'to award'

## 7.3. Derivation of Verbs from other Grammatical Categories

Verbs are also derived from nouns, adjectives, pronouns, interjections, etc. by means of various suffixes and prefixes.

#### a) Some verbs derived from nouns:

Noun	Verb
гост	'guest, visitor'
	да гостї/нагостї 'to treat someone to something'
игра	игрїя 'to play'
кал	калїям 'to cover with mud; sling mud at someone'
стрїла	стрїлям 'to shoot'

бесèда	'discussion'	бесèдвам	'to discuss, interview'
закон	'law'	узаконявлам	'to legalize'
курàж	'courage'	окуражàвам	'to encourage'
патèнт	'licence, patent'	патентòвам	'to patent'
глад	'hunger'	гладùвам	'to starve'
път	'road'	пътùвам	'to travel'
пиянство	'drunkenness'	пиянствам	'to drink hard'
чùвство	'feeling'	чùвствам	'to feel'
любопытство	'curiosity'	любопытствам	'to pry, be inquisitive'
грим	'make up'	гримѝрам	'to apply make up'
идеал	'ideal'	идеализѝрам	'to idealize'
терòр	'terror'	тероризѝрам	'to terrorize'
ръжда	'rust'	ръждàвам	'to rust'
сапùн	'soap'	сапунѝсвам (ce)	'to soap (oneself)'

b) Some verbs derived from adjectives:

Adjective		Verb	
велик	'great'	величая	'to glorify'
бесен	'furious'	беснèя	'to go mad, fly into a passion'
дебèл	'fat'	дебелèя	'to get fat, put on weight'
стар	'old'	старèя	'to grow old'
тòпъл	'warm'	тòпля	'to heat, keep warm'
нèрвен	'nervous'	нèрвнича	'to be restless, jittery'
вàжен	'important'	вàжнича	'to put on airs'
хитръп	'artful, clever'	хитрùвам	'to dodge, use cunning'

c) Some verbs derived from other categories:

Pronouns		Verb	
свой	'one's own'	усвойвам	'to learn/master'
себе си	'oneself'	обсèбвам	'to take possession of, appropriate'
Numerals		Verb	
втори	'second'	повтàрям	'to repeat, do sth. for the second time'

Adverbs	Verb		
близо	'near'	доближавам	'to approach, near'
го			
иначе	'otherwise'	преиначавам	'to distort'
<b>Interjections</b>		<b>Verb</b>	
мър-мър	мърмъря		'to murmur, grumble'
бър-бър	бърбъря		'to chatter, prattle'
ох	охна		'to moan, to groan (once)'
чук	чукна		'to knock's

## VI. ADVERBS

## Наречия

The Adverbs in Bulgarian are morphologically invariable words. In the sentence they often function as adverbial complements and may qualify verbs, nouns, adjectives or other adverbs.

Кàрайте <b>бàвно</b> .	'Drive slowly.'
Бащà <b>му</b> е <b>тèжко</b> бôлен.	'His father is seriously ill.'
Настанèте се в стàята <b>от-дàсно</b> .	'Check into the room on the right.'

### Classification:

In terms of their origin and structure adverbs may be classified into:

A) simple

вън 'outside'	там 'there'
вътре 'inside'	долу 'down'

b) compound

1. Derived from a simple adverb plus a preposition:			
навън	'outwards, outside'	натаm	'that way'
навътре	'inwards'	надолу	'downwards'

## 2. Derived from a preposition plus a noun:

насрѣща 'against'  
вкъщи 'at home'  
довѣчера 'tonight'

### 3. Formed in some other way:

гòре-долу 'more or less, so-so' (lit. 'up-down')  
лèка-полèка 'gradually, little by little'

In semantic terms adverbs are traditionally classified into:

a) adverbs of place

там	'there'	къде	'where'
напрèд	'forward'	назàд	'backward'
нàкъде	'somewhere'	нагòре	'upward'

b) adverbs of time

днес	'today'	нàкога	'never'
снòщи	'last night'	когà	'when'
сегà	'now'	тогàва	'then'

c) adverbs of manner

добrè	'well'	бързо	'quickly'
приятно	'pleasantly'	мълчаливо	'silently'
тихò	'quietly'	нàкак	'somehow'

d) adverbs of measure and degree

мнòго	'a lot'	веднàж	'once'
мàлко	'little, few'	чëсто	'often'
рьдко	'seldom'	òще	'more, yet'

e) adverbs of reason and purpose

зашò	'why'	затовà	'therefore, thus, that's why'
зашòто	'because, for that reason'	èто зашò	'so, thus'

f) adverbs of comment (modal)

всъщност	'in fact'	несъмнèно	'undoubtedly'
навàрно	'probably'	сìгурно	'perhaps, certainly'
осòбено	'particularly'	почти	'almost', etc.

**Derivation:**

The largest group of adverbs in the Bulgarian language are derived from adjectives. The most frequently used ending for adverbs is *-o* and a lot of adverbs coincide with the neuter gender form of the adjectives. Other less frequent endings are *-e* and *-u*. Adverbs in *-u* coincide with the masculine form of the respective adjectives.

Тя се смèеше *безгрижно*. 'She was laughing carelessly.'

Нàкога не бàхме се чùвст-  
вали тòлкова добrè. 'We had never felt so well.'

Спòрихме *приятелски*. 'We had a friendly argument.'

**Degrees of comparison:**

Adverbs of quality form degrees of comparison in the same way as adjectives (by adding the particles *нò-* for the comparative degree and *нàй-* for the superlative degree in front of the respective adverb).

**Examples:**

добrè 'well'	пò-добrè	'better'	нàй-добrе 'best'
тихò 'quietly'	пò-тихò	'more quietly'	нàй-тихò 'most quietly'
кèсно 'late'	пò-кèсно	'later'	нàй-кèсно 'latest'
Той се събùди <i>пò-кèсно</i> , откòлкото възнамерàваше.		'He woke up later than he intended.'	
Съжалàвам, че не бàх се сèтил за товà <i>пò-рано</i> .		'I was sorry I hadn't thought of it earlier.'	
<i>Нàй-чëсто</i> си мìслех за тovà, коèто се слùчи в ресторàнта.		'Most often I thought about what had happened in the restaurant.'	

**Syntactic functions:**

a) Adverbs may function as adverbial modifiers to finite and non-finite verb forms (semantically they may refer to manner, place, time, degree, purpose, cause, etc.).

Той завà *наляво и бàвно*  
продължì *надòлу* по юлица-  
та.

Ще мòжете да пàтувате  
*бързо и èстино*.

Пожàрът бушùваше *ожесто-  
чено*.

'He turned left and went on  
strolling slowly down the  
street.'

'You'll have the opportunity  
to travel quickly and cheaply.'

'The fire was blazing  
fiercely.'

b) Adverbs may function as adverbial modifiers to an adjective or to another adverb. Usually the modifying adverb is an intensifier.

Глèдката бèше *невероятно*  
красива.

Говорите *прекалèно* мнòго.  
Те остàнаха *безкомпромисно*  
вèрни на приnципите си.

'The scenery was unbelievably  
beautiful.'

'You talk too much.'

'They remained uncompromisingly  
loyal to their principles.'

c) Some adverbs may function as attributes modifying nouns:

Веселbите им продължìха

'Their revelries continued for

дни наред.

Всèки ден го вѝждам в кѝ-  
ното насрèща.

The position of the adverbs in Bulgarian is more mobile than in English but adverbs are rarely placed between an auxiliary verb and a participle.

Никога не съм хòдил в Пловдив.

Не съм хòдил в Пловдив никога.

Не съм никога хòдил в Пловдив.

days on end.'

'I see him every day at the  
opposite cinema.'

'I have never been to

Plovdiv.'

(rare)

## VII. PREPOSITIONS

### Предлози

Prepositions are function words indicating by their meaning various relations between notional verbs (nouns, pronouns, verbs, numerals, etc.) Prepositions usually take an object. The preposition and its object form a prepositional group.

без затруднèния

'without any difficulties'

по мòе мнèние

'in my opinion'

на море

'at the seaside'

In the sentence prepositional groups often function as adverbial modifiers (of place, time, number, purpose, degree, reason, etc.)

По таѝ причина не бàха  
приèти.

'For this reason they were not  
admitted.'

Самолётът кàцна преди пем  
минути.

'The plane landed five minutes  
ago.'

Quite similarly to English, the Bulgarian language has a great number of prepositions, which express various semantic relations. Prepositions may be classified into simple, compound and complex.

a) Simple prepositions consist of one syllable and are not normally stressed (they are proclitic). Nevertheless, they are always written separately. Sometimes, however, the logical stress may fall on a preposition:

- Как предпочитате чàя -  
със или без зàхар?

'How do you prefer tea - with  
or without sugar?'

- Без, моля.

'No sugar, please.'

b) Compound prepositions are comparatively recent formations, consisting of a single preposition, which had merged with another

preposition, adverb or noun, e.g.:

с-по-рèд 'according to' - Preposition - Preposition - Noun

Спорèд дòктор Мѝлев сърт- 'According to Dr. Milev, the  
тà е билà причинèна от от- cause of the death was poison-  
рàвяне. ing.'

c) Complex prepositions consist of two or three words (usually combinations of Preposition + Noun + [Preposition], which are written separately:

по отнòшениe на

въз оснòва на

по пòвод на

незавòисимо от

По пòвод на писмòто, коèто

полùчихме мìналата сèдми-  
ца, трàбва да напràвим нà-  
кои разяснèния.

Трябва да взèмем решèние

въз оснòва на напràвените  
вчера и днес предложèния.

'regarding, as regards'

'on the basis of, in virtue of'

'with reference to, in connection with'

'in spite of, despite, regardless of'

'With reference to the letter  
we received last week, certain  
points have to be clarified.'

'We must take a decision on the  
basis of the motions presented  
yesterday and today.'

Some of the more frequently used prepositions in Modern Bulgarian have several meanings and may be used in different contexts. The prepositions are listed in alphabetic order and supplied with examples, illustrating their basic usage.

1. **без** 'without', '-less', 'to'

Той изглèжда мнòго по-  
добрè **без** очилà.

Серà е осем **без** дèсет.

2. **в/във** 'in, into, at, on'

The variant **във** [vəf] is used before words beginning with the letters **е** or **ю** in written speech. In oral language the variant **във** may be used in all cases. .

The preposition **в/във** is used with verbs of motion, static verbs and with figurative meanings.

Note: the pronunciation of the preposition **в** is [f].

a) position in space:

Живèа **във** Вàрна.

Ще хòдя **във** Финлàндия на

'He looks much better without  
his glasses on.'

'It's ten minutes to eight now.'

'I live in Varna.'

'I'm going to Finland on a

на специализация.

Тя се гмурна *във* водата и енергично заплува към лодката.

b) time:

Сестрата ти не си беше вкъщи *в* шест часа.

Ще дойдеш ли с мен в болницата *във* вторник?

c) abstract meaning:

Трябва да платите *в* брой.

Тази слъчка се е врязала дълбоко *в* паметта ми.

3. *вместо* 'instead of'

Можеш ли да гледаш бебето *вместо* мен в събота?

Довечера предпочитам да отида на театър *вместо* да гледам телевизия.

4. *върху* 'on, upon, over, on top of, at'

a) the preposition *върху* may denote relation of position or movement over or across some surface in a literal or abstract sense.

Косата ѝ падаше *върху* очите ѝ.

*Върху* бънския си костюм носеше къса хавлиена рокля.

*Върху* лицето ѝ беше изпъсано недоумение.

Къщето се нахвърли *върху* него.

b) the preposition *върху*

Дълго разсъждавах *върху* този проблем.

Дойдох в България да проведа изследване *върху* южнославянските езици.

5. *въпреки* 'in spite of, despite'

Прекърхме добре на морето *въпреки* лошото време.

study trip.'

'She dived into the water and swam energetically towards the boat.'

'Your sister was not at home at six o'clock.'

'Will you come with me to the hospital on Tuesday?'

'You have to pay (in) cash.'

'The episode is sharply engraved in my mind.'

'Can you baby-sit for me on Saturday?'

'I'd rather go to the theatre tonight instead of watching TV.'

4. *върху* 'on, upon, over, on top of, at'

a) the preposition *върху* may denote relation of position or movement over or across some surface in a literal or abstract sense.

Her hair hung down over her eyes.'

'She was wearing a short towel robe over her bathing suit.'

'She had a puzzled look on her face.'

'The dog rushed at him.'

may also denote reference.

'I spent a lot of time meditating on the problem.'

'I've come to Bulgarian to do some research into the South-Slavonic languages.'

'We had a good time at the

*въпреки* лошото време.

Разбирахме го *въпреки* силния му акцент.

6. *до* 'next to, by, beside, near, till'

The preposition *до* is quite frequent and is used in relations of proximity and limit in space, time and quantity.

a) space:

Седнах *до* леглото ѝ.

Къщите им бяха една *до* друга.

Ще те изпратя *до* спирката.

b) time:

Обучението трае от три *до* пет години.

*До* тук добре.

Довиждане *до* утре.

*До* седем часа трябва да си напазарувал и да си се върнал.

c) quantity:

Напълнете епрувътката *до* половината.

d) abstract meaning:

Подадохте ли молба *до* декана?

7. *за* 'for, about, on, in, to, 0 (no preposition)'

This is an extremely frequent preposition in Bulgarian and may denote a wide range of relations.

a) purpose:

Свиря на пиано *за* удоволствие.

Сега нямам настроение *за* приказки.

Той е много заёт - няма време *за* губене.

Тя каза, че не може да ус-

seaside in spite of the bad weather.'

'We understood him in spite of his heavy accent.'

b) space:

'I sat down by her bed.'

'Their homes were next to each other.'

'I'll see you off to the bus stop.'

'The training takes from three to five years.'

'So far so good.'

'See you tomorrow (Goodbye till tomorrow).'

'You must have done the shopping and come back by seven o'clock.'

'Fill half of the test-tube.'

'Have you sent in an application to the Dean?'

5. *въпреки* 'in spite of, despite'

This is an extremely frequent preposition in Bulgarian and may denote a wide range of relations.

a) purpose:

'I play the piano for pleasure.'

'I'm in no mood to chat now.'

'He is very busy and has no time to lose.'

'She said she couldn't make it'

пее да дойде **за** вечеरя.  
**За** мен скуката е симптом  
на душевна оскъдица.

In this (as well as in other functions) the preposition **за** often corresponds to **of** (no preposition) in English.

клечка **за** зъби

'tooth-pick'

кюшче **за** боклук

'waste-paper basket'

Национален фронт **за** освобож-  
дение

b) destination:

Изтичахме да хвънem автобуса **за** центъра на града.

Тръгнахме **за** селото в най-  
добро настроение.

c) contact:

Той държеше чашата **за** дъ-  
ното.

Краката ми залепваха **за** пътя. 'My feet stuck to the road.'

d) beneficial:

Поръчах една кока-кола **за**  
нèя, а **за** мен - уиски със  
сода.

Цветята, набрани **за** нèго,  
вèхнеха и умíраха в ръцете  
ѝ.

e) exchange:

Смèням кола **за** вѝлно мèс-  
то.

d) reference:

The Bulgarian preposition **за** is frequently used with verbs of saying and thinking. In this meaning it corresponds to the English prepositions **about**, **of**, **on**, **concerning**, **regarding**, etc.

Те започнаха да ме разпит-  
ват подробно **за** кùчето.

Обичам да разговарям **за**  
книги и филми.

Винаги задаваха по някой

for dinner.'

'For me boredom is a symptom  
of spiritual poverty.'

'tooth-pick'

'waste-paper basket'

'National Liberation Front'

'We ran to catch the bus for  
the town centre.'

'We set out for the village in  
the best of moods.'

'He was holding the tumbler by  
its base.'

'My feet stuck to the road.'

'I ordered a Coke for her and  
a Scotch and soda for myself.'

'The flowers she had picked  
for him faded and died in  
her hands.'

'I exchange a car for summer-  
house land.'

'They asked me about the dog  
in detail.'

'I enjoy chatting about books  
and films.'

'There was always some ques-

въпрос **за** образованието.

g) temporal:

Не можах да се съредоточа  
**за** дълго.

Тя отиде в Лондон **за** две  
седмици.

Метрото ще бъде построено  
**за** три години.

Отрòвата е достатъчно силен  
на да убие човек **за** един  
час.

8. **зад** 'behind, at the back of'

The preposition is used with both static verbs and verbs of motion.

Двè момчета седяха **зад** мен  
в автобуса.

Слънцето се скри **зад** един  
облак.

Киното е **зад** ъгъла.

9. **заради** 'because of'

Ще закъснèя заради нея.

tion regarding education.'

'I couldn't concentrate for  
long.'

'She has gone to London for  
two weeks.'

'It will take three years to  
build the underground.'

'The poison is strong enough  
to kill a man within an hour.'

'There were two boys sitting  
behind me on the bus.'

'The sun went behind a cloud.'

'The cinema house is round the  
corner.'

'I'll be late because of her.'

10. **из** 'about, over, around, along'

The preposition is mainly used with verbs of motion and denotes movement without any definitive direction.

Тя прекàра сутринтà, раз-  
хòждайки се **из** тèсните  
ùлички на стария град.

Маргарита пътуваше сама  
**из** цàлата страна.

11. **извèн** 'out of, outside'

Той живеè **извèн** града.

Можете да пùшите сàмо  
**извèн** сградата.

'She spent the morning stroll-  
ing through the narrow streets  
of the old town.'

'Margaret travelled alone  
around the whole country.'

'He lives out of town.'

'Smoking is allowed only  
outside the building.'

12. **иззад** 'from behind'

Изведнèж **иззад** колата се  
появѝха двàма мъже.

'Two men suddenly appeared  
from behind the car.'

13. *като* 'as, like, such as'

a) comparison:

Тя изглеждаше побледняла  
*като* платнò.

Държѝш се *като* детè.

b) in the capacity of:

През лятото работя *като*  
експкурзовòд.

14. *край* 'along, beside, by the side of'

The preposition is used both with verbs of motion and with static verbs to denote relations of proximity.

Те ѝмат вѝла *край* морето. 'They have a summer house by the sea.'

Наминѝ *някой* път *край* нас. 'Why don't you drop by and see us some day?'

15. *към* 'towards, to, for'

The preposition is often used with verbs of motion and denotes direction (or destination) in a spatial, temporal and figurative sense.

a) spatial:

Той махна с ръкà и тръгна  
*към* входната вратà.

Той се отпràви *към* задната  
част на магазина.

Тя разсèяно посèгна *към*  
парфюма.

b) temporal:

Елàте *към* пет часà.

Тя трàбва да е *към* 40 години.

c) attitude:

Почùвствах враждебността им  
*към* мòите предложениа.

'We waved and moved towards  
the front door.'

'He headed for the back of the  
store.'

'Idly, she reached for her  
perfume bottle.'

16. *междù* 'between, among'

The Bulgarian preposition *междù* combines the meanings of the two English prepositions and may denote position, movement or distribution between two things or among more than two things (or people).

Трàбва да отидете при сек-  
ретàрката *междù* четири и  
пет часà следобед.

'You'll have to go and see the  
secretary between 4.00 and  
5.00 this afternoon.'

Чùвствах се неудòбно *междù*  
тòлкова непознатà хòра.

*Междù* дрùгото, мìсля, че  
трàбва да отидеш да се по-  
стрижеш.

17. *на* 'of, on, to, 's, 0, for, at, in, into, by'

The preposition *на* is the most frequently used one in Bulgarian. It has a variety of meanings and corresponds to various prepositions as well as to the -'s possessive in English. Among some of the relations that it may denote are:

a) possession:

Колàта *на* бащà мì е поврè-  
дена.

Резюмèтата трàбва да се из-  
прàтят до кràя *на* мèсеца.

b) dative relations:

Бìхте ли покàзали *на* тòзи  
чужденèц къдè да си паркѝ-  
ра колàта?

Дàй учèбника *на* Марìя, а не  
*на* Нели.

c) spatial relations:

The preposition is used both with verbs of motion and with static verbs to denote position on or over some surface.

Рèчникът е *на* мàсата.

Сложѝ чàшата *на* мàсата.

Изпùснах вàзата *на* пòда.

Всìчки от семèйството се-  
дяха *на* мàсата и обàдваха.

d) purpose of destination:

Ще хòдите ли *на* кѝно довè-  
чера?

Мòга ли да ви покàнà *на* ре-  
сторàнт?

Тя дойдè ли *на* срèщата?

e) temporal:

Тя е *на* 25 години

'I felt embarrassed amongst so  
many strangers.'

'By the way, I think you need  
a haircut.'

'My father's car is out of  
order.'

'The abstracts should be sub-  
mitted by the end of the month.'

'Would you show that foreigner  
where to park his car?'

'Give the textbook to Maria,  
not to Nelly.'

'The dictionary is on the table.'

'Put the glass on the table.'

'I dropped the vase onto the floor.'

'The whole family were sitting  
at the table and having lunch.'

'Are you going to the cinema  
tonight?'

'May I invite you to a  
restaurant?'

'Did she turn up for the appointment?'

"She is 25.'

Роден съм **на** пети октомври, 'I was born on October 5 th 1968.'

**На** другата сутрин се събудих с ужасно главоболие. 'On the next morning I woke up with a splitting headache.'

**18. над** 'over, above'

The preposition is used both with static verbs and with verbs of motion to denote spatial position above or higher than something.

Самолетът се издигна **над** облациите. 'The plane rose above the clouds.'

Той вероятно е **над** 50 години. 'He must be over 50.'

В приказките доброто възтържествува **над** злото. 'In fairy tales good usually triumphs over evil.'

Дали щяха да злорадстват **над** мое то нещастие? 'I wondered if they were going to gloat over my misfortune.'

**19. около** 'round, around, about'

a) position encircling something - in this meaning the preposition is used both with static verbs and with verbs of motion.

Земята се върти **около** слънцето. 'The earth moves round the sun.'

Някои от тях бяха на сядали, а други танцуваха **около** огъня. 'Some of people were sitting and others were dancing around the fire.'

b) proximity.

Омъжих се преди **около** два месеца. 'I got married about two months ago.'

Ще стръфа някъде **около** пет хиляди лева. 'It'll cost somewhere about five thousand levs.'

**20. освен** 'except, besides'

The Bulgarian preposition **освен** has two distinct meanings:

a) in addition to, including

**Освен** английски, говоря немски и испански. 'Besides English I speak German and Spanish.'

b) with the exception of, excluding

Никой друг не знае за това **освен** Нели. 'Nobody knows about it except Nelly.'

**Освен** леко вънене на свят, не чувствам нищо осъбено. 'Except for a slight dizziness, I don't feel anything peculiar.'

**21. от** 'from, away from, out of, by, of, off, than'

a) The basic meaning of the preposition is source or starting point in space or time. It may be used both with verbs of motion and with static verbs.

Ще вземем такси **от** летището до хотела. 'We'll take a taxi from the airport to the hotel.'

Ще отсъствам **от** работата за две седмици. 'I'll be absent from the office for two weeks.'

b) removal

Той бършеше потта **от** лицето си. 'He was wiping sweat off his face.'

c) material

Огърлицата е **от** чисто злато. 'The necklace is of solid gold.'

d) cause

Бях потисната **от** монотонния и скучен живот в селото. 'I was depressed by the monotony and boredom of the village life.'

Тя плачеше **от** радост. 'She was crying for joy.'

e) comparison

Чувствам се по-щастлива **от** всякога. 'I feel happier than ever before.'

Тя е по-висока **от** него. 'She is taller than him.'

**22. относно** 'concerning, about, regarding'

Не желая да отговарям на въпроси **относно** моя личен живот. 'I refuse to answer questions concerning my private life.'

**23. по** 'on, over, along, by, in, through'

a) The preposition is used both with verbs of motion and with static verbs to denote position or movement over some surface.

Дрехите му бяха разпилени по пода. 'His clothes were strewn all over the floor.'

**По** коя улица трябва да вървим, за да стигнем до гарата? 'Which street must we take to get to the railway station?'

b) temporal

**По** това време бях болен и **по** цели нощи не спях. 'At that time I was ill and I used to stay awake all nights long.'

c) manner and cause

Всичко вървèше **по** план.  
Стойха **по** групички и разговаряха оживèно.

Адреналинът е открит **по** погрèшка.

Катастрофата беше стàнала **по** невнимàние.

**По** общо съгласие, той беше най-подходàщийят кандидат.

d) **quality**

Той е тих **по** природа.  
e) **reference**

Кùпихте ли си учèбника **по** химия?

Преподавателят **по** социология ще изнесе сèрия от лекции **по** интересни теми.

24. **под** 'under, underneath, beneath, in'

Те вървàха и пèеха **под** дъжда. 'They were walking and singing in the rain.'

Решìх до слèдам прàво **под** влияние на родителите си. 'I decided to study law under the influence of my parents.'

Те ме държàха **под** напрежèние. 'They kept me under stress.'

Намèрихте ли нèщо **под** снегà? 'Did you find anything under the snow?'

25. **покràй** 'along, past, via, by, near'

The preposition is used mainly with verbs of motion and denotes relations of proximity.

Ще мìнете **покràй** една книжàрница и един цветàрски магазин.

Той изтìчà **покràй** мен.

26. **помеждù** 'between'

This preposition is equal to **междù** used with the short form of the dative personal pronoun or personal reflective pronoun.

**помеждù** ни = **междù** нас

**помеждù** им = **междù** тях

**помеждù** си = **междù** сèбе си

'Everything went according to plan.'  
'They were standing in groups and were talking animatedly.'

'Adrenalin was discovered through a mistake.'

'The accident happened through carelessness.'

'By common consent he was the most suitable candidate.'

'He is a quiet man by nature.'

'Have you bought the chemistry textbook?'

'The lecturer in sociology will be giving a series of lectures on some interesting topics.'

24. **под** 'under, underneath, beneath, in'

'They were walking and singing in the rain.'

'I decided to study law under the influence of my parents.'

'They kept me under stress.'

'Did you find anything under the snow?'

'You will walk past a bookshop and a florist's.'

'He ran past me.'

27. **порадù** 'because of, on account of'

Въздàржам се от пìне **по-** **радù** заболяването си. 'I abstain from drinking on account of my poor health.'

28. **посрèд** 'in the middle of'

Върнах се вкùщи **посрèд** нощ. 'I came back home in the middle of the night.'

29. **пред** 'in front of, before, ahead of'

**Пред** съюзите "че" и "акò" се пише запетàя. 'Comma is written before the conjunctions "че" and "акò".'

**Пред** кùщата ѹма два стàри дàба. 'There are two old oak trees in front of the house.'

Никога не беше пàла **пред** тòлкова отбрàна пùбlica. 'She had never performed before such a select audience.'

30. **предù** 'ago, before, prior to'

While the preposition **пред** denotes spatial, **предù** is mostly used to denote temporal relations.

Това се слùчи тòчно **предù** Кòледа. 'This happened just before Christmas.'

Мòстът е построèен **предù** пòвече от двèста години. 'The bridge was built over 200 years ago.'

31. **прèз** 'through, during, by way of, out of'

a) spatial relations

Трàбва да мìнете пèрво **прèз** мìтницата. 'You should go through Customs first.'

Ще пытùваме до Лòндон **прèз** Брюксел. 'We'll fly to London via Brussels.'

b) temporal relations

**Прèз** войнàта е бил във воèнно-въздушните сìли. 'He had been in the air force during the war.'

За прèв путь се срèещнахме **прèз** пролеттà на 1982 г. 'We met first in the spring of 1982.'

32. **при** 'at, near, with, by'

a) spatial and temporal relations

Той живèе **при** родителите си. 'He lives with his parents.'

Мòже би трàбва да отидете **при** адвокàт. 'You may have to see a lawyer about this.'

Свùржете се с нèго **при**

'Contact him at the earliest

първа възможност.

При тези думи всички се разсмяха.

b) circumstance

Дори *при* благоприятни условия задачата ви никак не е лесна.

33. *против* 'against, contrary to'

Колко души са гласували *против* предложението?

Мисля, че тя няма нищо *против* теб.

Трябва да постъпя *против* принципите си.

34. *с/със* 'with'

The preposition is quite similar in function to the English preposition *with* and denotes mainly relations of togetherness and instrumental relations. The variant *със* [səs] is used before words beginning with the letters *c* and *z* in written language. In oral speech *със* is used in front of any word no matter the letter it begins with.

a) relations of togetherness

Тя разговаряше *с* един мъж с брада и очила.

Очите ѝ се напълниха *със* сълзи.

Имаме търговски отношения *с* много страни.

b) instrumental relations

Нарежи шунката *с* онзи нож. Вратата е отключена *с* шперц.

35. *след*

a) spatial relations

Вървете *след* мен.

Тя гневно затвори вратата *след* събе си.

b) temporal relations

opportunity.'

'Everyone laughed on hearing these words.'

'Even under favourable circumstances your task is far from easy.'

'How many people have voted against the proposal?'

'I think she has nothing against you.'

'I'll have to do it against my principles.'

Ще се върна *след* малко.

36. *според* 'according to'  
*Според* картата до езерото оставаха още пет километра.

37. *сред*

Той беше доста известен *сред* цените на шахмата в страната.

38. *среци* 'against, opposite, facing, over, across'

The preposition is used both with static verbs and with verbs of motion.

Помолих мъжъ *среци* мен да ми свали куфара.

Имаше няколко стари къщи *среци* реката.

Бяха явно настроени *среци* срещата за масова информация.

39. *у* 'at'

The preposition is used both with verbs of motion and with static verbs and is sometimes replaceable by the preposition *нрп* and *до*.

Ще си бъдеш ли *у* домъ до въчера?

У нас често *ѝдват* гости.

У кога е писалката *ми*?

Note: This preposition is used with plural forms of long accusative pronouns to denote someone's place.

у нас 'at my/our place'

у вас 'at your place'

у тях 'at his/her/their place'

40. *чрез* 'through, by means of'

Запознах се с няя *чрез* брат си. 'I was introduced to her through my brother.'

Some prepositions combine with conjunctions to form complex conjunctions: *без да* 'without', *въпреки че* 'although', *преди да* 'before', *след като* 'after', etc.

Приличам на баща си, *въпреки* 'I look like my father al-

'T'll be back in a little while.'

'According to the map there were five more kilometres to the lake.'

'amidst, among, in'

'He was quite famous among the chess fans in the country.'

'I asked the man opposite me to take down my suitcase.'

'There were a few old houses facing the river.'

'They were openly antagonistic against the mass media.'

'Will you be at home tonight?'

'We often have guests at our place.'

'Who has got my pen?'

ки че не съм толкова ви-  
сок. though I am not as tall as  
him.'

Similarly to English, some prepositions in Bulgarian coincide with adverbs and function either as adverbs or as prepositions.

Дойдох *преди* пет минути. 'I arrived five minutes ago.'  
(preposition)

Всичко си беше както *преди*. 'Everything was the same as  
(adverb) before.'

### VIII. CONJUNCTIONS

#### Съюзи

Conjunctions do not change in form. They function as connectors between notional words, phrases, clauses or sentences, thus providing coherence in a text.

In terms of structure the conjunctions in Bulgarian are classified into simple and complex (or composite).

a) simple conjunctions:

<i>а</i>	'but, and, while'
<i>ако</i>	'if'
<i>алà</i>	'but'
<i>дали</i>	'whether, if'
<i>и</i>	'and'
<i>или</i>	'or'
<i>като</i>	'as'
<i>но</i>	'but'
<i>че</i>	'that', etc.

Most of the morphologically simple conjunctions had the same function in old Bulgarian and are also called 'true' conjunctions.

b) composite conjunctions

<i>без да</i>	'without'
<i>за да</i>	'in order to'
<i>освен да</i>	'except'
<i>въпреки че</i>	'although'
<i>след като</i>	'after'
<i>затова че</i>	'because'
<i>така че</i>	'so, thus', etc.

A number of conjunctions form correlative pairs:

*ниèто ... ниèто* 'neither ... nor'  
*или ... или* 'either ... or'  
*тъ ... тъ* 'now ... now'  
*хем ... хем* 'both ... and', etc.

Relative and Interrogative pronouns often function as conjunctions.  
(cf. Pronouns)

Не знам *кој* от книгите е  
по-хубава.

*Каквото* и да кажеш, ще  
срешиш.

Some adverbs with interrogative and relative meaning also function as conjunctions.

Той искаше да ме научи *как*  
да плувам бруст.

*Накъдето* и да се обрнеше,  
вийдаше макове.

Two major types of conjunctions are distinguished according to their syntactic function and to the semantic relations they denote:

a) coordinating conjunctions (съчинителни съюзи)

Coordinating conjunctions connect homogeneous parts of a simple sentence (words, phrases), clauses of equal rank or independent clauses.

Ще се отбия у вас в събота  
*или* в неделя.

Писането му вървеше бавно  
*и* мъчително.

Ще ѝмаме събрание, *но* няма  
да обсъждаме този проблем.

Similarly to English, the conjunctions in Bulgarian express four types of coordinating connections, which allow for different shades of meaning depending on the context:

1. Copulative (съединителни)

*и* 'and'

Правете каквото ви се казва  
*и* няма да сърквате.

*хем ... хем* 'both ... and'

*Хем* се вълнувах, *хем* се тре-

'Do just what you are told and  
you won't be wrong.'

'I was both excited and worri-

вожех за бъдещите си перспективи.

**нѝто** 'not'

Дорѝ за момѐнт не се съмниваше, **нѝто** се страхуваше от евентуален провал.

**нѝто ... нѝто** 'neither ... nor'

Той **нѝто** пие, **нѝто** пуши.

**нѝ сѝмо ... но** 'not only ... but', etc.

Смѝтам, че **нѝ сѝмо** ще се разочаровате, но и мнѝго ще съжалявате, ако направите това.

## 2. Disjunctive (съотносителни)

**или** 'or'

Искате ли да обядваме сега **или** да почакаме да дойдат и останалите?

**дали** ... **или** 'whether ... or'

Не знаеше **дали** да плаче **или** да се смее.

**ту** ... **ту** 'sometimes ... at others, now ... now'

Ту ми праща картички, ту ми се обаждам по телефона, никога не ми пише писмà.

**я** ... **я** 'either ... or' (colloquial), etc.

Утре **я** ще валѝ, **я** ще бъде мнѝго ветровито.

## 3. Adversative (противоположни)

**а** 'but, and'

Дъждът се усѝли, **а** не съм си взел чадѝр.

**но** 'but'

Знѧя, **но** нѝма да ти кàжа.

**сѝмо че** 'but, however'

Щах да дойда, **сѝмо че** бях

ед about my future prospects.'

'He didn't doubt it for a moment, nor had he any fears about a possible failure.'

'He neither drinks nor smokes.'

'I think you won't only be disappointed but you'll be extremely sorry if you do that.'

'Shall we start lunch now or wait for the rest to come?'

'She didn't know whether to laugh or cry.'

'Now she sends postcards, now she telephones, but she never writes letters.'

'It's either going to rain tomorrow, or it's going to be very windy.'

'The rain has become quite heavy and I've left my umbrella at home.'

'I know it but I'm not going to tell you.'

'I would have come but I was

мнѝго зает.'

**алà** 'and yet, yet'

Цѝлата кола бѝше изпочупена, **алà** по нѝго нѝмаше and и дракотѝна.

**обаче** 'However', etc.

Бях сѝгурен, че ще полѝча наградата, **обаче** нѝкой ме бѝше изпреварил.

## 4. Causal or Resultative (заключителни)

**затова** 'that's why, therefore, and so'

Колата не е нѝдва - **затова** е по-евтина.

**така че** 'therefore, so'

Нарѝчно оставихме вратата отворена, **така че** да гледаме кой минава.

**следователно** 'therefore, thus'

Наблюдава се, че продавачите ѝмат предпочтѝя към привлекателните клиенти.

**Следователно** обслѹжването се влияе от външността.

**ето защò** 'so, hence', etc.

Аз не знаех добре английски, а той въобщѝ не разбѝраше български, **ето защò** разговяряхме чрез преводач. Експериментът не е проведен правилно. **Ето защò** резултатите не са убедителни.

## b) Subordinating conjunctions (подчинителни съюзи)

Subordinating conjunctions usually join subordinate clauses to main clauses. They may be subclassified according to the types of subordinate clauses into:

### 1. Conjunctions joining the attributive clauses to the main clause.

Usually relative and interrogative pronouns, adverbs and particles.

Товà е човèкът, *кòйтò* спаси детèто ви.

Искам да знам брòя на хòрата, *коитò* ще присъстват на конферèнцията.

Стàтията е написана от проф. Фьрт, за *когòтò* сì-гурно сте чùвали.

Не мòжехме да решим *кòдè* ще бòде наì-добрè да прекàраме вакàнцията.

Не мòга да си отгòвòри на въпрòса *зашò* тòлкова се страхùвам от товà.

2. Conjunctions joining the objective clause to the main clause: *че*, *да* as well as interrogative pronouns and interrogative adverbs.

In contrast to English, it is impossible to drop the conjunction *че*, although the Bulgarian sentences correspond quite often to English contact clauses, in which the conjunction that is optional and often dropped.

Той кàза, *че* е ѹстина.

Поглèднах навèн и видàх, *че* си бòха трèгнали.

Не мòга да разберè *кой* ми е оставил товà съобщèние.

Не знàя *дали* ще ѹмаме контролно днес.

Тя ме попытa *кòлко* е часът.

Не бях сìгурен *как* ще се чùствам катò главà на семейство.

### 3. Conjunctions joining the adverbial clause to the main clause.

Adverbial conjunctions introduce adverbial clauses and are subdivided into: conjunctions of:

'That's the man who saved your child.'

'I'd like to know the number of the people who are going to attend the conference.'

'The paper was written by prof. Firth, of whom you must have heard.'

'We couldn't make up our minds about the best place to spend our holiday.'

'I can't find an answer to the question why I fear this so much.'

3. Conjunctions joining the adverbial clause to the main clause: *че*, *да* as well as interrogative pronouns and interrogative adverbs.

'He said it was true.'

'I looked out and saw (that) they had driven away.'

'I can't find out who has left this message for me.'

'I don't know whether we are going to have a test today.'

'She asked me what time it was.'

'I was not sure how I would feel about being the head of a family.'

### place

Мòля те, останì там, *кòдè-то* си.

'Please, stay where you are.'

### time

Нàкой ми е удàрил колàта, *докатò* е билà паркìрана пред киното.

'My car got a severe bump while it was parked in front of a cinema house.'

### purpose

Дойдòх *да* поèма слùжбата си.

'I have come to take up my job.'

Трèбва да трèгнем мнòго рàно, *за да* стìгнем наврèме.

'We'll have to start very early to get there on time.'

### cause

Той отсъства, *зашòтò* е бòлен.

'He is absent because he is ill.'

*Тъй катò* бòше недèля, решìхме да поспìм до по-късно.

'Since it was Sunday we decided to sleep late.'

Не можàх да му откàжа, *понèжè* сме приятели.

'Being friends with him I couldn't very well turn him down.'

### result and consequence

Тòлкова ми се спи, *че* едвàм си държà очите отвòрени.

'I feel so sleepy that I can hardly keep my eyes open.'

### manner and comparison

Той вървèше, катò се поклащаше. 'He was walking in a swaying manner.' Живèем *такà*, *кàкто* са живèли родителите ни.

'We live like our parents used to.'

### condition, etc.

Те нàма да стìгнат наврèме, *акò* не бòрзат.

'They will not get there in time unless they hurry.'

Тя кàза, *че* ще дòйде, *при условие* *че* мòже да доведè и дъщеря си. .

'She said she would come, provided she might bring her daughter.'

## IX. PARTICLES

### Частици

Particles are function words with invariable morphological structure.

The particles in Bulgarian are classified into three groups:

1. Particles used in analytical grammatical forms.

*ще* - for future tense forms

*Ще* се върна след половин час. 'I'll be back in half an hour.'

*нò-, най-* - for the comparative and superlative degrees

Моля, говорете *нò-силно*. 'Will you speak up, please.'

*нека да* - for first and third person imperative

*Нека да* си тръгваме. 'Let's go.'

*недèй, недèйте* - for negative imperatives

*Недèйте* му задава никакви 'Don't ask him any questions.'

въпроси.

2. Particles used for the formation of reflexive verbs - *ce* and *ci*.

*Ще ce* обръсна. 'I am going to shave.'

*Ще ci* обръсна брадата. 'I'll shave off my beard.'

3. Particles that may change the meaning of the syntactic form of a sentence or some of its parts.

a) Interrogative particles

*ли* - This particle forms general questions and may be placed after various parts of the sentence, providing in combination with word order and intonation different shades of meaning and emphasis.

В сръда *ли* ще ходиш на тенис? 'Is it on Wednesday that you are going to play tennis?'

На тенис *ли* ще ходиш в сръда? 'Is it to the tennis courts that you are going on Wednesday?'

С тях *ли* ще игрàеш тенис в сръда? 'Is it them that you are going to play tennis with on Wednesday?'

*далù-* this particle is always at the beginning of interrogative sentences.

*Далù* ще бъдат враждебно стрòени или безразлични към мен? 'I wonder whether they'll be hostile or just indifferent towards me.'

*нали* - This particle may be used in initial or final position in a sentence and usually forms sentences, which correspond to English tag questions.

*Нали* уж беòе заòта днес? 'You said you were busy today, didn't you?'  
Няма да забрàвиш да ми се обàдиш, *нали*? 'You won't forget to give me a ring, will you?'

*нимà* - This particle is placed only in initial position and usually forms exclamatory sentences.

*Нимà* това е ѹстина! 'Can that be true?'

*Нимà* може той да е говорил такива нещà по мой адрес! 'Is it possible that he said such things about me?'

b) Positive particles

*да* 'yes'

- Харèса ли ти филмът? 'Did you like the film?'

- *Да*, мнòго. 'Yes, a lot.'

*ахà, амì* - These particles are mainly used in dialects and colloquial or informal speech.

- Откъдè си?

- От сèло Ракитово.

- *Ахà*, знам го. Бил съм там.

- Дàнчо, пòмниш ли Маргарита?

- Пòмня я, *амì*. Забрàвя ли се такòва красиòво момиче! 'Dancho, do you remember Margaret? Why, of course I remember her. Can one forget such a lovely girl.'

c) Negative particles

*не* 'no, not'

- Глèда ли снòщи мàча по телевизията?

- *Не, не* гò глèдах. *Не* сì бяж вкъщи.

*Нè* всички харèсват тàзи пиèса.

*ни, нùто* - These particles are usually used as intensifiers in negative sentences.

Не можà да чùя *ни* дùма зарадì тях.

*Нùто* стотинка не мì е ос тàнала.

Те не мì помòгнаха *нùто* веднàж.

d) Particles with modal meanings

*Хàйде* да не сè кàраме. 'Let's not quarrel.'

*Данò* да не закъснèем! 'I do hope we aren't late.'

Ех, *да* не бяж те послùшал! 'I wish I hadn't done as you said!'

## LITERATURE

1. Андрейчин, Л. Основна българска граматика. София, 1978.
2. Андрейчин, Л., Попов, К., Стоянов Ст. Граматика на българския език, София, 1977.
3. Атанасова Т. и др. Английска граматика в сравнение с българския език (2-зд изд.), София, 1977.
4. Георгиева, Е. Словоред на простото изречение в българския книжовен език. София, 1974.
5. Граматика на съвременния български книжовен език. Т. 1-3, София, 1982-1983.
6. Данчев, А. Контрастивна лингвистика, анализ на грешките и чуждоезиково обучение. - Съпоставително езикознание и чуждоезиково обучение. Великотърновски университет "Кирил и Методий", 1980.
7. Данчев, А. Към фонологичната характеристика на "българския" междинен език. - Съпоставително езикознание и чуждоезиково обучение. София, 1980, кн. 2.
8. Додова, Л., Кацарова, В. и Павлова, А. Кратка граматика на английския език. (2-ро изд.), София, 1982.
9. Кръстев, Б. Морфология на българския език в 187 типови таблици. София, 1985.
10. Мирчев, К. Българският език през вековете. София, 1964.
11. Мирчев, К. Историческа граматика на българския език. София, 1978.
12. Молхова, Ж. и др. Английска граматика в сравнение с български език. Синтаксис. София, 1965.
13. Ницолова, Р. Прагматичен аспект на изречението в българския книжовен език. София, 1984.
14. Пашов, П. и Ницолова, Р. Помагало по българска морфология. Глагол. София, 1976.
15. Пенчев, Й. Структура на българското изречение. София, 1983.
16. Петрова, Ст. Gramatica de la lengua Bulgara, Sofia, 1986.
17. Попов, К. Помагало по български синтаксис. София, 1979.
18. Попов, К. Синтактичното съгласуване в български език. София, 1964.
19. Попов, К. Съвременен български език. Синтаксис. София, 1984.

20. Ранкова, М., Иванова, Цв. Английска граматика, София, 1980.
21. Станков, В. Глаголният вид в българския книжовен език. София, 1980.
22. Стоянов, Ст. Граматика на българския книжовен език. Фонетика и морфология. София, 1980.
23. Холидей, А. Сопоставление языков. Вопросы теории перевода в зарубежной лингвистике. Москва, 1978.
24. Danchev, A., Nachkova, E. B. Vousheva, N. Stoilova, T. Kmetova, I. Angelova, P. Benatova, K. Tasseva, E. Todeva. English for Bulgarians, Sofia, 1958.
25. Minkoff, M. An English grammar, Sofia, 1958.
26. Petrova, St. Gramatica de la lengua Bulgara (curso breve para hispanohablantes). Sofia, 1985.
27. Pulkina, I. M. A short Russian reference grammar. Moscow, 3rd edition.
28. Scatton, E. A. A Reference Grammar of Modern Bulgarian, Columbus, Ohio, Slavica Publishers Inc., 1984.
- 29s. Swan, M. Practical English Usage, Oxford University Press, 1980, Second Edition, 1995.

## CONTENTS

Some Basic Data About the Bulgarian Language .....	5
Preface .....	5

### Part One

#### PHONETICS (ФОНЕТИКА)

Vowels (Гласни) .....	10
Unstressed Vowels (Неударени гласни) .....	12
Consonants (Съгласни) .....	12
Palatal Consonants (Палатални съгласни) .....	19
Stress (Ударение) .....	19
Phonetic Alterations (Фонемни редувания) .....	22
Metathesis (Метатеза) .....	27

### Part Two

#### MORPHOLOGY (МОРФОЛОГИЯ)

I. Nouns (Съществителни имена) .....	32
Gender (Род) .....	32
Number (Число) .....	34
Determination of Nouns (Членуване на съществителните имена) .....	41
Use of the Definite Article (Употреба на определителния член) .....	44
Formation of Nouns (Образуване на съществителните имена) .....	49
II. Adjectives (Прилагателни имена) .....	55
Gender (Род) .....	56
Plural of adjectives (Множествено число на прилагателните имена) .....	57
The Use of the Definite Article with Adjectives (Членуване на прилагателните имена) .....	58
Degrees of Comparison (Степени на сравнение) .....	60
Formation of Adjectives (Образуване на прилагателните имена) .....	61
III. Numerals (Числителни имена) .....	67
Cardinal Numerals (Бройни числителни) .....	67
Ordinal Numerals (Редни числителни) .....	72
IV. Pronouns (Местоимения) .....	78
1. Personal Pronouns (Лични местоимения) .....	78
2. Possessive Pronouns (Притежателни местоимения) .....	81

3. Reflexive Pronouns (Възвратни местоимения) .....	86
4. Demonstrative Pronouns (Показателни местоимения) .....	91
5. Interrogative Pronouns (Въпросителни местоимения) .....	93
6. Relative Pronouns (Относителни местоимения) .....	96
7. Indefinite Pronouns (Неопределителни местоимения) .....	97
8. Negative Pronouns (Отрицателни местоимения) .....	99
9. Generalizing Pronouns (Обобщителни местоимения) .....	101
V. Verbs (Глаголи) .....	103
5.1. Classification of Verbs (Класификация на глаголите) .....	103
A. Transitive and Intransitive Verbs (Преходни и непреходни глаголи) .....	103
B. Personal and Impersonal Verbs (Лични и безлични глаголи) .....	106
C. Non-Reflexive and Reflexive Verbs (Невъзвратни и възвратни глаголи) .....	107
D. Simple and Compound Verbs (Прости и сложни глаголи) .....	109
5.2. Grammatical Categories of the Verb (Граматически категории на глагола) .....	109
1. Person and Number (Лице и число) .....	109
2. Aspect (Вид на глагола) .....	110
3. The Tense System (Глаголните времена) .....	111
3.1. The Present Tense (Сегашно време) .....	112
3.2. The Imperfect Past (Минало несвършено време) .....	116
3.3. The Aorist Past Tense (Минало свършено време -аорист) .....	120
3.4. The Perfect Tense (Минало неопределено време) .....	130
3.5. The Past Perfect Tense (Минало предварително време) .....	134
3.6. The Future Tense (Бъдеще време) .....	136
3.7. The Future in the Past Tense (Бъдеще време в миналото) .....	141
3.8. The Future Perfect Tense (Бъдеще предварително време) .....	142
3.9. The Future Perfect in the Past Tense (Бъдеще предварително време в миналото) .....	144
4. Voice of the Verb (Залог на глагола) .....	147
Formation of the Passive Voice (Образуване на страдателния залог) .....	147
5. Mood of the Verb ((Наклонение на глагола) .....	149
5.1. The Indicative Mood (Извявително наклонение) .....	150
5.2. The Imperative Mood (Повелително наклонение) .....	150
5.3. The Conditional Mood (Условно наклонение) .....	154

5.4. The Renarrated Mood (Преизказно наклонение) .....	157
6. Non-Finite Verb Forms (Нелични глаголни форми) .....	162
6.1. Participles (Причастия) .....	162
A. The Active Present Participle (Сегашно деятелно причастие) .....	162
B. The Active Imperfect Past Participle (Минало несвършено дателно причастие) .....	164
C. The Active Aorist Past Participle (Минало свършено дателно причастие) .....	165
D. The Passive Past Participle ((Минало страдателно причастие) .....	167
6.2. Verbal Adverbs (Деепричастия) .....	170
6.3. Verbal Nouns (Отглаголни съществителни) .....	171
6.4. The Infinitive (Инфинитив) .....	173
7. Verb Formation (Образуване на глаголите) .....	174
7.1. Derivation of Verbs of the Perfective Aspect (Образуване на глаголи от свършен вид) .....	174
7.2. Derivation of Imperfective Verbs (Образуване на глаголи от несвършен вид) .....	182
7.3. Derivation of Verbs from other grammatical Categories (Образуване на глаголи от други граматически категории) .....	183
VI. Adverbs (Наречия) .....	185
VII. Prepositions (Предлози) .....	188
VIII. Conjunctions (Съюзи) .....	202
IX. Particles (Частици) .....	207
Literature .....	210

Evgenia Antova,  
Ekaterina Boytchinova,  
Poly Benatova  
(второ преработено издание)

**A SHORT GRAMMAR OF BULGARIAN  
FOR ENGLISH SPEAKING LEARNERS**

Second revised edition: Ekaterina Boytchinova

Editor: Prof. Stefka Petrova

Editors of the first edition (1991):  
prof. Andrei Danchev prof. Stefka Petrova

Печатни коли 13.5

ISBN 954-91197-1-8

Издават: "АВМ Комерс" ЕТ, тел.: 943 39 66, 048 92 51 66

"АСПА" СД, тел.: 981 23 59, 55 89 86

София 2002

Рèша <i>сe</i> .	'I comb myself.'
Рèша <i>сi</i> косàта.	'I comb my hair.'
Облякох сe.	'I've dressed (myself).'
Облякох сi новата рòкля.	'I've put on my new dress.'

In Russian the reflexive particle is spelt together with the verb. It is *-сe* for first person singular and plural and *-ся* for all the rest verb forms.

Я одевàюсь.	'I am putting on my clothes.'
Мàльчик одевàется.	'The boy is putting on his clothes.'
Мать причёсывается.	'The mother is combing her hair.'

These verbs in Bulgarian also occur as non-reflexive (ordinary) verbs and are mostly used transitively (with a direct object):

Той й помòгна да облечè	'He helped her dress the children.'
-------------------------	-------------------------------------

b) Reflexive verbs are used to make passive sentences. Only transitive verbs form passives.

Децàта <i>сe</i> възпитàват от родителите сi.	'Children are brought up by their parents.'
Тук не <i>сè</i> пùши.	'No smoking (here).'
Как се кàзва тàзи мèстност?	'What's this place called?'

In Russian the corresponding passive:

В нàшой лаборатории провòдятся эксперимèнты.	'Experiments are being carried out in our laboratory.'
--	--

The same example in Bulgarian:

В нàшата лаборатòрия се провèждаят екперимèнти.

c) There is a group of reflexive verbs which are used intransitively and some of them do not have corresponding non-reflexive forms:

Bulgarian	Russian	English
Стрàхувам сe.	Боюсь.	'I am afraid.'
Вълнùва сe.	Волнùется.	'He/she is excited.'
Гордèя сe.	Горжùсь.	'I am proud.'

d) There are some impersonal reflexive verbs such as:

Съмва сe.	'Dawn is breaking.'
Смрачàва сe.	'It's getting dark.'
Спí мi сe.	'I feel sleepy.', etc.

e) Reciprocal verbs. The Subject is usually in the plural. Only

transitive verbs occur in this category - срèщаме сe 'to meet (each other)', прегрьщаме сe 'to embrance (each other)', пишем сi 'to write letters (to each other)', поздравѝваме сe 'to greet (each other)', запознàваме сe 'to get acquainted (with each other)', etc.

Ние сe разбíраме добrè.	'We get along well (with each other).'
-------------------------	--

Вèче двà мèсесца не сi говорим.	'We've not been on speaking terms for two months now.'
---------------------------------	--

In Russian the corresponding verbs verbs are also reflexive: встречàться 'to meet (each other)', обнимàться 'to embrace (each other)', перепíсываться 'to write letters (to each other)', здорòваться 'to shake hands, to greet (each other)', знакòмиться 'to get acquainted (with each other)', etc.

#### D. Simple and Compound Verbs

##### Простi и сложни глаголи

Simple verbs have a single root morpheme:

ниш/a	'I write'
ниш/еш	'You write'
пре/ниc/ах	'I have copied'

Compound verbs have more than one root morpheme. The root morphemes are usually linked by the linking vowels [o] or [e]. Compound verbs are usually written as one word:

рък/o/мàхам	'to gesticulate'
рък/o/вòдя	'to guide/manage'
льж/e/свидèтелствам	'to commit perjury'

#### 5.2. GRAMMATICAL CATEGORIES OF THE VERB

##### 1. Person and Number

###### Лице и число

Verbs in Bulgarian have no infinitive form. They have morphological markers (endings) for the first, second and third person singular and plural. The basic form of the verb is the first person singular of the Present Tense. The person and number markers differ for the different conjugations and tenses of the verbs. Compare for example the Present Tense forms of the verbs: